

(12) PATENT
(19) AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

(11) Application No. AU 199738081 B2
(10) Patent No. 717387

(54) Title
Peptide nucleic acids having enhanced binding affinity, sequence specificity and solubility

(51)⁷ International Patent Classification(s)
C07K 005/02

(21) Application No: **199738081**

(22) Application Date: **1997.07.24**

(87) WIPO No: **WO98/03542**

(30) Priority Data

(31) Number	(32) Date	(33) Country
08685484	1996.07.24	US
08686116	1996.07.24	US
08686114	1996.07.24	US
08686113	1996.07.24	US
60051002	1997.05.29	US

(43) Publication Date : **1998.02.10**

(43) Publication Journal Date : **1998.04.09**

(44) Accepted Journal Date : **2000.03.23**

(71) Applicant(s)
Peter E. Nielsen; Michael Egholm; Rolf H. Berg; Dorte Buchardt

(72) Inventor(s)
Michael Egholm; Peter E. Nielsen; Rolf H. Berg; Ole Buchardt

(74) Agent/Attorney
F B RICE and CO,605 Darling Street,BALMAIN NSW 2041

(56) Related Art
NATURE, VOL.365, 1993, PP566-568
JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEM. SOC.,VOL 114,1992 PP9677-9678
JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEM. SOC.,VOL 114,1992,PP1895-1897

OPI DATE 10/02/98 APPLN. ID 38081/97
AOJP DATE 09/04/98 PCT NUMBER PCT/US97/12811



AU9738081

INTE

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07K 5/02		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/03542																			
			(43) International Publication Date: 29 January 1998 (29.01.98)																			
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/12811			(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): BUCHARDT, Dorte (legal representative of the deceased inventor) [DK/DK]; Sondergardsveg 73, DK-3500 Vaerlose (DK). (71) Applicant (for AM AZ BY KG KZ MD RU TJ TM only): ISIS PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 2292 Faraday Avenue, Carlsbad, CA 92008 (US). (71)(72) Applicants and Inventors: NIELSEN, Peter, E. [DK/DK]; Hjortevaenget 509, DK-2980 Køddelev (DK). EGHOLM, Michael [DK/US]; 1231 Lexington Ridge Drive, Lexington, MA 02173 (US). BERG, Rolf, H. [DK/DK]; Strandvaenget 6, DK-2960 Rungsted Kyst (DK). (72) Inventor: BUCHARDT, Ole (deceased). (74) Agents: CALDWELL, John, P. et al.; Woodcock Washburu Kurtz Mackiewicz & Norris LLP, 46th floor, One Liberty Place, Philadelphia, PA 19103 (US). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).																			
(22) International Filing Date: 24 July 1997 (24.07.97)																						
(30) Priority Data: <table border="0"><tr><td>08/685,484</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>08/686,116</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>08/686,114</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>08/686,113</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td><td>US</td></tr><tr><td>60/051,002</td><td>29 May 1997 (29.05.97)</td><td>US</td></tr></table>				08/685,484	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,116	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,114	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,113	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	60/051,002	29 May 1997 (29.05.97)	US				
08/685,484	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US																				
08/686,116	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US																				
08/686,114	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US																				
08/686,113	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US																				
60/051,002	29 May 1997 (29.05.97)	US																				
(60) Parent Applications or Grants																						
(63) Related by Continuation <table border="0"><tr><td>US</td><td>08/685,484 (CIP)</td></tr><tr><td>Filed on</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td></tr><tr><td>US</td><td>08/686,116 (CIP)</td></tr><tr><td>Filed on</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td></tr><tr><td>US</td><td>08/686,114 (CIP)</td></tr><tr><td>Filed on</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td></tr><tr><td>US</td><td>08/686,113 (CIP)</td></tr><tr><td>Filed on</td><td>24 July 1996 (24.07.96)</td></tr><tr><td>US</td><td>60/051,002 (CIP)</td></tr><tr><td>Filed on</td><td>29 May 1997 (29.05.97)</td></tr></table>			US	08/685,484 (CIP)	Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,116 (CIP)	Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,114 (CIP)	Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	08/686,113 (CIP)	Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)	US	60/051,002 (CIP)	Filed on	29 May 1997 (29.05.97)
US	08/685,484 (CIP)																					
Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)																					
US	08/686,116 (CIP)																					
Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)																					
US	08/686,114 (CIP)																					
Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)																					
US	08/686,113 (CIP)																					
Filed on	24 July 1996 (24.07.96)																					
US	60/051,002 (CIP)																					
Filed on	29 May 1997 (29.05.97)																					
																						
Published With international search report.																						
(54) Title: PEPTIDE NUCLEIC ACIDS HAVING ENHANCED BINDING AFFINITY, SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY AND SOLUBILITY																						
(57) Abstract A novel class of compounds, known as peptide nucleic acids, bind complementary DNA and RNA strands more strongly than a corresponding DNA strand, and exhibit increased sequence specificity and solubility. The peptide nucleic acids comprise ligands selected from a group consisting of naturally-occurring nucleobases and non-naturally-occurring nucleobases attached to a polyamide backbone, and contain C₁-C₃ alkylamine side chains. Methods of enhancing the solubility, binding affinity and sequence specificity of PNAs are provided.																						

**PEPTIDE NUCLEIC ACIDS HAVING ENHANCED
BINDING AFFINITY, SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY AND SOLUBILITY**

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation-in-part of United States Applications Serial Nos:
5 08/685,484, 08/686,116, 08/686,114 and 08/686,113, each of which were filed July 24,
1996, each of which is a continuation-in-part of United States Application Serial No:
08/108,591, filed November 22, 1993, which is a continuation-in-part of Danish Patent
Application No. 986/91, filed May 24, 1991, Danish Patent Application No. 987/91, filed
May 24, 1991, and Danish Patent Application No. 510/92, filed April 15, 1992. This
10 application also claims benefit of, and is a continuation-in-part of U.S. provisional
application No. (not yet assigned), filed May 29, 1997. The entire disclosure of each of
the above-mentioned applications is incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to methods for enhancing sequence specificity,
15 binding affinity and solubility of peptide nucleic acids (PNAs) in which naturally-occurring
nucleobases or non-naturally-occurring nucleobases are covalently bound to a polyamide
backbone. The PNAs of the present invention comprise at least one C₁-C₈ alkylamine side
chain resulting in enhanced solubility, binding affinity to nucleic acids and sequence
specificity as well as other beneficial qualities. In certain aspects, the present invention is
20 directed to histidine-containing peptide nucleic acids and to synthetic intermediates
employed in preparing such compounds.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The function of a gene starts by transcription of its information to a messenger RNA (mRNA). By interacting with the ribosomal complex, mRNA directs synthesis of the protein. This protein synthesis process is known as translation. Translation requires the presence of various cofactors, building blocks, amino acids and transfer RNAs (tRNAs),
5 all of which are present in normal cells.

Most conventional drugs exert their effect by interacting with and modulating one or more targeted endogenous proteins, *e.g.*, enzymes. Typically, however, such drugs are not specific for targeted proteins but interact with other proteins as well. Thus, use of a relatively large dose of drug is necessary to effectively modulate the action of a particular
10 protein. If the modulation of a protein activity could be achieved by interaction with or inactivation of mRNA, a dramatic reduction in the amount of drug necessary, and the side-effects of the drug, could be achieved. Further reductions in the amount of drug necessary and the side-effects could be obtained if such interaction is site-specific. Since a functioning gene continually produces mRNA, it would be even more advantageous if gene
15 transcription could be arrested in its entirety. Oligonucleotides and their analogs have been developed and used as diagnostics, therapeutics and research reagents. One example of a modification to oligonucleotides is labeling with non-isotopic labels, *e.g.*, fluorescein, biotin, digoxigenin, alkaline phosphatase, or other reporter molecules. Other modifications have been made to the ribose phosphate backbone to increase the resistance to nucleases.
20 These modifications include use of linkages such as methyl phosphonates, phosphorothioates and phosphorodithioates, and 2'-O-methyl ribose sugar moieties. Other oligonucleotide modifications include those made to modulate uptake and cellular distribution. Phosphorothioate oligonucleotides are presently being used as antisense agents in human clinical trials for the treatment of various disease states. Although some
25 improvements in diagnostic and therapeutic uses have been realized with these oligonucleotide modifications, there exists an ongoing demand for improved oligonucleotide analogs.

In the art, there are several known nucleic acid analogs having nucleobases bound to backbones other than the naturally-occurring ribonucleic acids or deoxyribonucleic acids.
30 These nucleic acid analogs have the ability to bind to nucleic acids with complementary nucleobase sequences. Among these, the peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), as described, for example, in WO 92/20702, have been shown to be useful as therapeutic and diagnostic

reagents. This may be due to their generally higher affinity for complementary nucleobase sequence than the corresponding wild-type nucleic acids.

PNAs are compounds that are analogous to oligonucleotides, but differ in composition. In PNAs, the deoxyribose backbone of oligonucleotide is replaced by a peptide backbone. Each subunit of the peptide backbone is attached to a naturally-
5 occurring or non-naturally-occurring nucleobase. One such peptide backbone is constructed of repeating units of N-(2-aminoethyl)glycine linked through amide bonds.

PNAs bind to both DNA and RNA and form PNA/DNA or PNA/RNA duplexes. The resulting PNA/DNA or PNA/RNA duplexes are bound tighter than corresponding
10 DNA/DNA or DNA/RNA duplexes as evidenced by their higher melting temperatures (T_m). This high thermal stability of PNA/DNA(RNA) duplexes has been attributed to the neutrality of the PNA backbone, which results elimination of charge repulsion that is present in DNA/DNA or RNA/RNA duplexes. Another advantage of PNA/DNA(RNA) duplexes is that T_m is practically independent of salt concentration. DNA/DNA duplexes,
15 on the other hand, are highly dependent on the ionic strength.

Homopyrimidine PNAs have been shown to bind complementary DNA or RNA forming (PNA)₂/DNA(RNA) triplexes of high thermal stability (Egholm *et al.*, *Science*,
1991, 254, 1497; Egholm *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1992, 114, 1895; Egholm *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1992, 114, 9677).

20 In addition to increased affinity, PNAs have increased specificity for DNA binding. Thus, a PNA/DNA duplex mismatch show 8 to 20°C drop in the T_m relative to the DNA/DNA duplex. This decrease in T_m is not observed with the corresponding DNA/DNA duplex mismatch (Egholm *et al.*, *Nature* 1993, 365, 566).

The binding of a PNA strand to a DNA or RNA strand can occur in one
25 of two orientations. The orientation is said to be anti-parallel when the DNA or RNA strand in a 5' to 3' orientation binds to the complementary PNA strand such that the carboxyl end of the PNA is directed towards the 5' end of the DNA or RNA and amino end of the PNA is directed towards the 3' end of the DNA or RNA. In the parallel orientation the carboxyl end and amino end of the PNA are just the reverse with respect
30 to the 5'-3' direction of the DNA or RNA.

PNAs bind to both single stranded DNA and double stranded DNA. As noted above, in binding to double stranded DNA it has been observed that two strands of PNA

can bind to the DNA. While PNA/DNA duplexes are stable in the antiparallel configuration, it was previously believed that the parallel orientation is preferred for (PNA)₂/DNA.

The binding of two single stranded pyrimidine PNAs to a double stranded DNA has been shown to take place via strand displacement, rather than conventional triple helix formation as observed with triplexing oligonucleotides. When a PNA strand invades double stranded DNA, one strand of the DNA is displaced and forms a loop on the side of the PNA₂/DNA complex area. The other strand of the DNA is locked up in the (PNA)₂/DNA triplex structure. The loop area (alternately referenced as a D loop) being single stranded, is susceptible to cleavage by enzymes that can cleave single stranded DNA.

A further advantage of PNAs, compared to oligonucleotides, is that the polyamide backbone of PNAs is resistant to degradation by enzymes.

These properties make PNAs useful in several applications. Since PNAs have stronger binding and greater specificity than oligonucleotides, they are used as probes in cloning, blotting procedures, and in applications such as fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH). Homopyrimidine PNAs are used for strand displacement in homopurine targets. The restriction sites that overlap with or are adjacent to the D-loop are not cleaved by restriction enzymes. Also, the local triplex inhibits gene transcription. Thus in binding of PNAs to specific restriction sites within a DNA fragment, cleavage at those sites can be inhibited. Advantage can be taken of this in cloning and subcloning procedures. Labeled PNAs are also used to directly map DNA molecules. In effecting this, PNA molecules having a fluorescent label are hybridized to complementary sequences in duplex DNA using strand invasion.

PNA have further been used to detect point mutations in PCR-based assays (PCR clamping). PCR clamping uses PNA to detect point mutations in a PCR-based assay, e.g., the distinction between a common wild type allele and a mutant allele, in a segment of DNA under investigation. A PNA oligomer complementary to the wild type sequence is synthesized. The PCR reaction mixture contains this PNA and two DNA primers, one of which is complementary to the mutant sequence. The wild type PNA oligomer and the DNA primer compete for hybridization to the target. Hybridization of the DNA primer and subsequent amplification will only occur if the target is a mutant allele. With this method, one can determine the presence and exact identity of a mutant.

Considerable research is being directed to the application of oligonucleotides and oligonucleotide analogs that bind to complementary DNA and RNA strands for use as diagnostics, research reagents and potential therapeutics. For many applications, the oligonucleotides and oligonucleotide analogs must be transported across cell membranes or taken up by cells to express their activity.

PCT/EP/01219 describes novel PNAs which bind to complementary DNA and RNA more tightly than the corresponding DNA. It is desirable to append groups to these PNAs which will modulate their activity, modify their membrane permeability or increase their cellular uptake property. One method for increasing amount of cellular uptake property of PNAs is to attach a lipophilic group. Canadian Patent

Number 2,122,030 describes several alkylamino functionalities and their use in the attachment of such pendant groups to oligonucleosides.

WO 94/06815 describe other novel amine-containing compounds and their incorporation into oligonucleotides for, *inter alia*, the purposes of enhancing cellular uptake, increasing lipophilicity, causing greater cellular retention and increasing the distribution of the compound within the cell.

United States Patent Number 5,578,718 filed Sept. 3 1993, describes nucleosides and oligonucleosides derivatized to include a thiolalkyl functionality, through which pendant groups are attached.

Peptide nucleic acids may contain purine or pyrimidine nucleobases. However, previous PNAs having a high purine nucleobase content exhibit decreased solubility at physiological pH. PNAs of the present invention overcome this problem.

Despite recent advances, there remains a need for a stable compound that enhances or modulates binding to nucleic acids, stabilizes the hybridized complexes and increases the aqueous solubility.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

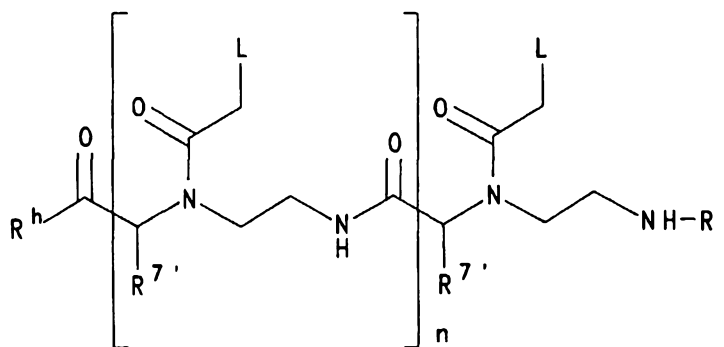
The present invention provides methods for enhancing the solubility, sequence specificity and binding affinity of peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), for complementary DNA or RNA, by incorporation C₁-C₈ alkylamine side chain into PNAs.

The peptide nucleic acids (PNAs) of the invention generally comprise ligands



linked to a polyamide backbone. Representative ligands include the four major naturally-occurring DNA nucleobases (*i.e.* thymine, cytosine, adenine and guanine), other naturally-occurring nucleobases (*e.g.* inosine, uracil, 5-methylcytosine, thiouracil or 2,6-diaminopurine) or artificial bases (*e.g.* bromothymine, azaadenines or azaguanines) attached to a polyamide backbone through a suitable linker.

In one aspect, the present invention provides a method for enhancing the DNA or RNA sequence specificity of a peptide nucleic acid by incorporating C₁-C₈ alkylamine side chain in said peptide nucleic acid having formula (I):



(I)

wherein:

each L is independently selected from a group consisting of naturally-occurring nucleobases and non-naturally-occurring nucleobases;

each R^{7'} is independently hydrogen or C₁-C₈ alkylamine, provided that at least one R^{7'} is C₁-C₈ alkylamine;

R^h is OH, NH₂ or NHLysNH₂;

Rⁱ is H, COCH₃ or *t*-butoxycarbonyl; and

n is an integer from 1 to 30.

Preferably, at least one R^{7'} is C₃-C₆ alkylamine. More preferably, at least one R^{7'} is C₄-C₅ alkylamine. Even more preferably, at least one R^{7'} is butylamine. Still even more preferably, substantially all of the R^{7'} are butylamine.

Preferably, the carbon atom to which substituent R^{7'} are attached is stereochemically enriched. Hereinafter, "stereochemically enriched" means that one stereoisomer is present more than the other stereoisomer in a sufficient amount as to provide a beneficial effect. Preferably, one stereoisomer is present by more than 50%. More preferably, one stereoisomer is present by more than 80%. Even more preferably,

one stereoisomer is present by more than 90%. Still more preferably, one stereoisomer is present by more than 95%. Even more preferably, one stereoisomer is present by more than 99%. Still even more preferably, one stereoisomer is present in substantially quantitatively. Preferably, the stereochemical enrichment is of R configuration.

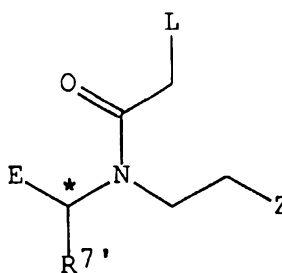
5 Preferably, the peptide nucleic acid is derived from an amino acid. More preferably, the peptide nucleic acid is derived from D-lysine.

The present invention also provides a method for enhancing the DNA or RNA binding affinity of a peptide nucleic acid by incorporating C₁-C₈ alkylamine side chain in the peptide nucleic acid having formula (I).

10 The present invention also provides a method for enhancing the solubility of a peptide nucleic acid by incorporating C₁-C₈ alkylamine side chain in the peptide nucleic acid having formula (I).

The PNAs of the invention are synthesized by adaptation of standard peptide synthesis procedures, either in solution or on a solid phase.

15 In some preferred embodiments, the monomer subunits of the invention are amino acids or their activated derivatives, protected by standard protecting groups known in the art. Preferred monomer subunits according to the present invention are amino acid compounds having formula (II):



(II)

wherein:

L is a naturally-occurring nucleobase or a non-naturally-occurring nucleobase, or a protected derivative thereof;

R' is hydrogen or C₁-C₈ alkylamine;

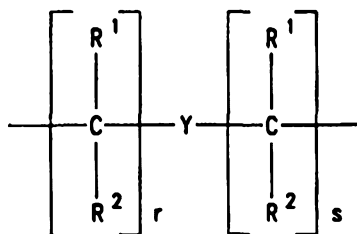
25 E is COOH or an activated or protected derivative thereof; and

Z is NH₂ or NHPg, wherein Pg is an amino-protecting group.

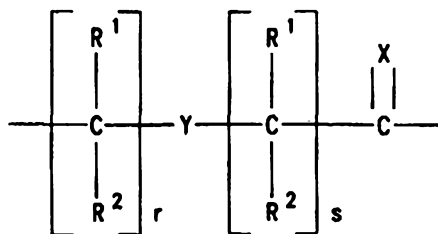
R_{10} is an amine protecting group;

L' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxy, (C_1-C_4) alkanoyl, naturally occurring nucleobases, non-naturally occurring nucleobases, aromatic moieties, DNA intercalators, nucleobase-binding groups, and heterocyclic moieties, reporter ligands, wherein amino groups are, optionally, protected by amino protecting groups;

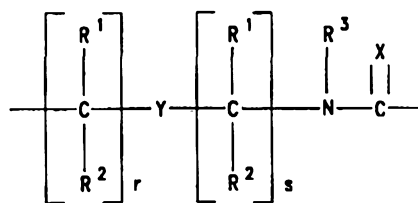
A is a group of formula (IIa)-(IId):



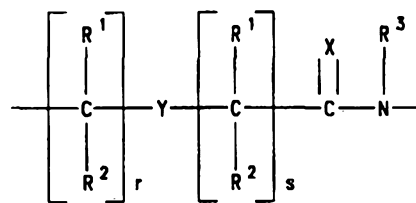
(IIa)



(IIb)



(IIc)



(IIId)

where:

X is O, S, Se, NR^3 , CH_2 or $C(CH_3)_2$;

Y is a single bond, O, S or NR^4 where R^4 is as described above;

each r and s is zero or an integer from 1 to 5;

each R^1 and R^2 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_1-C_4) alkyl which may be hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, amino and halogen; and

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_1-C_4) alkyl, hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted (C_1-C_4) alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio and amino.

The present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising peptide nucleic acids of the present invention and at least one pharmaceutically effective carrier, binder, thickener, diluent, buffer, preservative, or surface active agent.

In other aspects, methods are provided for method for enhancing the DNA or RNA sequence specificity of a peptide nucleic acid by incorporating one or more 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases into the peptide nucleic acid backbone.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figures 1(a) and 1(b) provide examples of naturally-occurring and non-naturally-occurring nucleobases for DNA recognition.

5 Figure 2 shows the Acr^I ligand and a PNA, Acr^I-(Taeg)₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

Figure 3 provides a general scheme for solid phase PNA synthesis illustrating the preparation of linear unprotected PNA amides.

Figure 4 provides a procedure for the synthesis of protected PNA synthons.

10 Figure 5 provides a procedure for synthesis of thymine monomer synthons with side chains corresponding to the common amino acids.

Figure 6 provides a procedure for synthesis of an aminoethyl-β-alanine analogue of thymine monomer synthon.

Figures 7(a), 7(b) and 7(c) are schematics showing the synthesis of PNA monomers containing lysine.

15 Figure 8 is a graph showing inhibition of HCV protein translation in an *in vitro* translation assay.

Figure 9 is a representative synthetic scheme for compounds having formula (III).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Specific sequence recognition of DNA or RNA is of increasing importance for the
20 development of biological probes and new reagents for use in research (Uhlmann, E., Peyman, A., *Chem. Rev.*, **1990**, 90, 544, and Helene, C., Toulme, J.J., *Biochim. Biophys. Acta.*, **1990**, 1049, 99). Peptide nucleic acids (PNA), achiral analogs of DNA in which the nucleobases or nucleobase analogs are attached to a (2-aminoethyl)-glycine backbone through a methylene carbonyl linker, have properties making them well suited for use as
25 biological probes and other applications. PNAs have shown strong binding affinity and specificity to complementary DNA, sequence specific inhibition of DNA restriction enzyme cleavage and site specific *in vitro* inhibition of translation (Egholm, M., *et.al.*, *Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.*, **1993**, 800; Egholm, M., *et.al.*, *Nature*, **1993**, 365, 566; Nielsen, M., *et.al. Nucl. Acids Res.*, **1993**, 21, 197; and Hanvey, J.C., *et.al.*, *Science*, **1992**, 258, 1481).
30 Modifications of PNA include extended backbones (Hyrup, B., *et.al. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.*, **1993**, 518), extended linkers between the backbone and the nucleobase, reversal

of the amido bond (Lagriffoul, P.H., *et.al.*, *Biomed. Chem. Lett.*, **1994**, *4*, 1081), and the use of a chiral backbone based on alanine (Dueholm, K.L., *et.al.*, *BioMed. Chem. Lett.*, **1994**, *4*, 1077).

In the PNAs of the present invention having the formula (I), nucleobase L is a naturally-occurring nucleobase attached at the position found in nature, *i.e.*, position 9 for adenine or guanine, and position 1 for thymine or cytosine, a non-naturally-occurring nucleobase (nucleobase analog) or a nucleobase-binding moiety. Nucleobase L can also be a naturally-occurring nucleobase such as a 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase. Some typical nucleobases and illustrative synthetic nucleobases are shown in Figures 1(a) and 1(b).

In monomer subunits according to the present invention having the formula (II), L is a naturally-occurring nucleobase or a non-naturally-occurring nucleobase which may be protected with one or more protecting groups. Exemplary protecting groups include *t*-butoxycarbonyl (BOC), fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc) or 2-nitrobenzyl (2Nb). Accordingly, such protecting groups may be either acid, base, hydrogenolytic or photolytically labile.

Preferably R⁷ is independently hydrogen or C₁-C₈ alkylamine.

Preferably, E in the monomer subunit is COOH or an activated derivative thereof. Activation may, for example, be achieved using an acid anhydride or an active ester derivative.

The amino acids which form the polyamide backbone may be identical or different. We have found that those based on 2-aminoethylglycine are particularly useful in the present invention.

The PNAs of the present invention may be linked to low molecular weight effector ligands, such as ligands having nuclease activity or alkylating activity or reporter ligands (*e.g.*, fluorescent, spin labels, radioactive, protein recognition ligands, for example, biotin or haptens). PNAs may also be linked to peptides or proteins, where the peptides have signaling activity. Exemplary proteins include enzymes, transcription factors and antibodies. The PNAs of the present invention may also be attached to water-soluble polymer, water-insoluble polymers, oligonucleotides or carbohydrates. When warranted, a PNA oligomer may be synthesized onto a moiety (*e.g.*, a peptide chain, reporter, intercalator or other type of ligand-containing group) attached to a solid support.

In monomer subunits according to the present invention having the formula (II),

- 12 -

L is a naturally-occurring nucleobase or a non-naturally-occurring nucleobase which may be protected with one or more protecting groups.

A compound according to the present invention having general formula (II), L is a 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase which may be protected with one or more protecting
5 groups. Exemplary protecting groups include *t*-butoxycarbonyl (BOC), fluorenylmethyl-oxycarbonyl (Fmoc) or 2-nitrobenzyl (2Nb). Accordingly, such protecting groups may be either acid, base, hydrogenolytic or photolytically labile.

Preferably R⁷ is independently hydrogen or C₁-C₈ alkylamine.

Preferably, E in the monomer subunit is COOH or an activated derivative thereof.
10 Activation may, for example, be achieved using an acid anhydride or an active ester derivative.

The amino acids which form the polyamide backbone may be identical or different. We have found that those based on 2-aminoethylglycine are particularly useful in the present invention.

15 The PNAs of the present invention may be used for gene modulation (*e.g.*, gene targeted drugs), diagnostics, biotechnology and other research purposes. The PNAs may also be used to target RNA and single stranded DNA (ssDNA) to produce both antisense-type gene regulating moieties and as hybridization probes, *e.g.*, for the identification and purification of nucleic acids. Furthermore, the PNAs may be modified in such a way that
20 they form triple helices with double stranded DNA (dsDNA). Compounds that bind sequence-specifically to dsDNA have applications as gene targeted drugs. These compounds are extremely useful drugs for treating diseases such as cancer, acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) and other virus infections and genetic disorders. Furthermore, these compounds may be used in research, diagnostics and for detection and
25 isolation of specific nucleic acids.

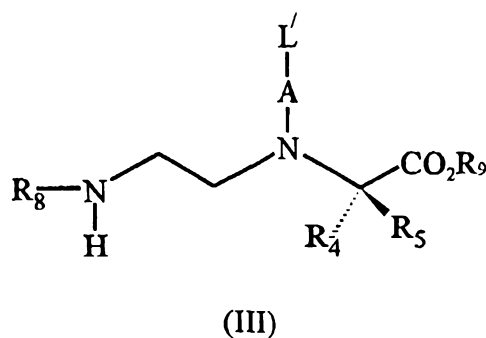
Gene-targeted drugs are designed with a nucleobase sequence (preferably containing 10-20 units) complementary to the regulatory region (the promoter) of the target gene. Therefore, upon administration, the gene-targeted drugs bind to the promoter and prevent RNA polymerase from accessing the promoter. Consequently, no mRNA, and thus
30 no gene product (protein), is produced. If the target is within a vital gene for a virus, no viable virus particles will be produced. Alternatively, the target region could be downstream from the promoter, causing the RNA polymerase to terminate at this position,

thus forming a truncated mRNA/protein which is nonfunctional.

Sequence-specific recognition of ssDNA by base complementary hybridization can likewise be exploited to target specific genes and viruses. In this case, the target sequence is contained in the mRNA such that binding of the drug to the target hinders the action of ribosomes and, consequently, translation of the mRNA into a protein. The PNAs of the present invention have higher affinity for complementary ssDNA than other currently available oligonucleotide analogs. Also PNAs of the present invention need not possess a net charge and can bear substituents that enhance aqueous solubility, which facilitates cellular uptake. In addition, the PNAs of the present invention contain amides of non-biological amino acids, which make them biostable and resistant to enzymatic degradation.

The PNAs of the present invention comprising C₁-C₈ alkylamine side chains exhibit enhanced binding affinity. This is demonstrated by increased thermal stability of the complex formed between said compounds of the present invention and a complementary DNA strand. The PNAs of the present invention also exhibit enhanced solubility and sequence specificity in binding to complementary nucleic acids.

In one aspect, the present invention is directed to PNAs which bear a histidine-containing moiety. Preferred compounds are those having formula (III):



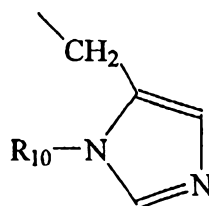
wherein

R₈ is H or an amine protecting group;

R₉ is H, alkyl having from 1 to about 12 carbon atoms, or alkenyl having from 2 to about 12 carbon atoms, preferably an allyl group;

one of R₄ and R₅ is H and the other of R₄ and R₅ is a moiety of formula (IV)

- 14 -



(IV)

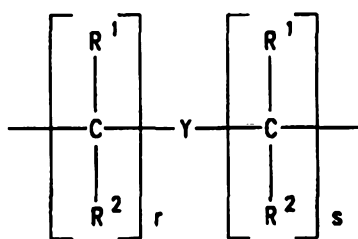
wherein

R_{10} is an amine protecting group;

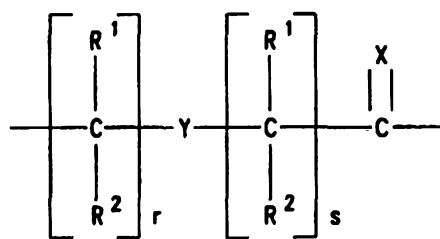
- 5 L' is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxy, (C_1-C_4) alkanoyl, naturally occurring nucleobases, non-naturally occurring nucleobases, aromatic moieties, DNA intercalators, nucleobase-binding groups, and heterocyclic moieties, reporter ligands, wherein amino groups are, optionally, protected by amino protecting groups;

A is a group of formula (IIa)-(IId):

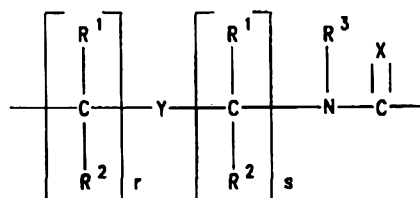
10



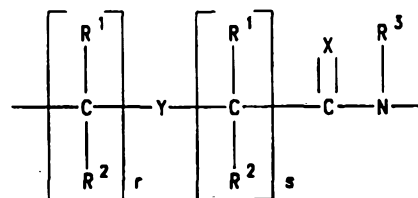
(IIa)



(IIb)



(IIc)



(IIId)

where:

15

X is O, S, Se, NR^3 , CH_2 or $C(CH_3)_2$;

Y is a single bond, O, S or NR^4 where R^4 is as described above;

each r and s is zero or an integer from 1 to 5;

each R^1 and R^2 is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_1-C_4) alkyl which may be hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted, hydroxy, alkoxy,

20 alkylthio, amino and halogen; and

- 15 -

R³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁-C₄)alkyl, hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted (C₁-C₄)alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio and amino.

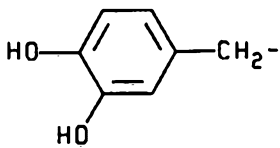
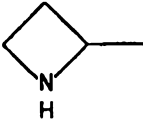
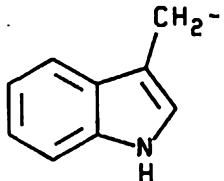
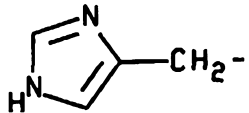
While not wishing to be bound by any particular theory, such compounds are believed to have enhanced uptake properties. It is known in the art that the introduction of positive charges on the backbone can increase cellular uptake. The histidine moiety is capable of a partial positive charge at physiological pH.

Alkyl groups according to the invention include but are not limited to straight chain, branched chain, and cyclic hydrocarbons such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, pentyl, isopropyl, 2-butyl, isobutyl, 2-methylbutyl, and isopentyl moieties having 1 to about 12 carbon atoms, preferably 1 to about 7 carbon atoms.

Aryl groups according to the invention are aromatic groups including, for example, benzyl, imidazolyl, naphthyl, phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, and xylyl groups and substituted derivatives thereof, particularly those substituted with alkyl, alkoxy, amino, and nitro groups. Preferred aryl groups have 6 to about 14 carbon atoms.

The term amino acid as used herein is intended to include all naturally-occurring and synthetic amino acids known in the art. In general, amino acids have structure H₂N-CH(R_C)-C(O)OH where R_C is the amino acid side chain. Representative, naturally-occurring side chains are shown in Table 1.

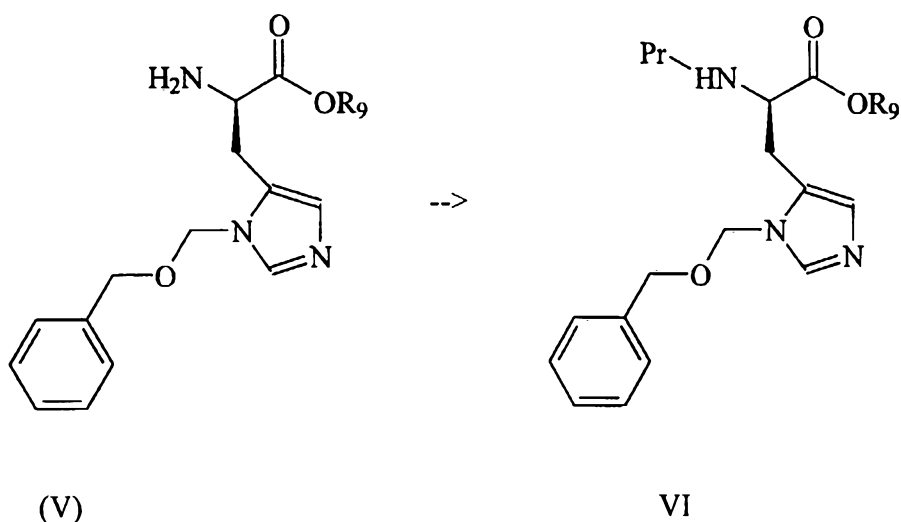
TABLE 1

CH ₃ -	CH ₃ -CH ₂ -S-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
HO-CH ₂ -	HO-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
C ₆ H ₅ -CH ₂ -	CH ₃ -CH ₂ (OH)-
5 HO-C ₆ H ₅ -CH ₂ -	HO ₂ C-CH ₂ -NH ₂ C(O)-CH ₂ -
	
	HCO ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
	NH ₂ C(O)-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
HS-CH ₂ -	(CH ₃) ₂ -CH-
HO ₂ C-CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -S-S-CH ₂ -	(CH ₃) ₂ -CH-CH ₂ -
CH ₃ -CH ₂ -	CH ₃ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
CH ₃ -S-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -	H ₂ N-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
	H ₂ N-C(NH)-NH-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
	H ₂ N-C(O)-NH-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
	CH ₃ -CH ₂ -CH(CH ₃)-
	CH ₃ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
	H ₂ N-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -
10 Preferred side chains include those that exhibit polarity such as those having primary or secondary amines. A more preferred list includes HO-CH ₂ -, HO-C ₆ H ₅ -CH ₂ -, HO ₂ C-CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -S-S-CH ₂ -, HO-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -, HCO ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -, H ₂ N-C(NH)-NH-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -, H ₂ N-C(O)-NH-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -, H ₂ N-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ -CH ₂ - and <i>p</i> -HO- <i>m</i> -HO-C ₆ H ₄ -CH ₂ -.	

15 Nucleotide bases according to the invention include heterocyclic bases, including those which occur naturally in DNA and RNA, and modified bases. Modified bases are

those in which the purine or pyrimidine ring is altered. Naturally occurring bases include adenine, guanine, hypoxanthine, xanthine, uracil, cytosine, and thymine. Exemplary modified bases include 6-methylaminopurine, 7-methylguanine, and 5-methylcytosine.

Compounds of formula (VI) may be prepared by incorporating an amino acid
5 protecting group (Pr) into compounds of formula (V):



This is shown in Figure 9 for the compound where R₉ is methyl.

Protecting groups are known *per se* as chemical functional groups that can be
10 selectively appended to and removed from functionality, such as amine, carboxyl, or hydroxyl groups, which present in a chemical compound, thus rendering such functionality inert to chemical reaction conditions to which the compound is exposed. *See, e.g.*, Greene and Wuts, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 2d edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991. Representative carboxyl protecting groups include lower (*i.e.*, C₁-C₇) alkyl
15 esters and benzyl esters. Preferred carboxyl protecting groups are those that are stable to moderately strong acid but can be removed with strongly acidic conditions.

Compounds having formula (VI) preferably are prepared by appending amine
protecting groups directly to amino acids having formula (V). Suitable protecting groups
in this regard include the allyloxycarbonyl (Alloc), benzyloxycarbonyl (CBz) and
20 chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl groups. Some preferred amine protecting groups include *t*-butyloxycarbonyl (Boc), *t*-butyloxymethyl, fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (Fmoc), 2,4-dinitrophenyl and isonicotinylloxycarbonyl (i-Noc) groups. Preferred amine protecting

groups for direct attachment to amino acids are those that are stable to acidic conditions but can be removed under basic conditions. Compounds of formula (V) can be readily obtained by alkylation of the corresponding amino acid, according to methods known to those skilled in the art. For example, compounds wherein R₂ is methyl may be prepared
5 by methylation, using known methylating agents such as (trimethylsilyl)diazomethane. Other methods include alkylation with diazomethane or preparation of the sodium salt of the carboxyl group followed by treatment with methyl iodide.

PNAs of the present invention are useful as research reagents and as diagnostic tools. PNAs have been used in studies to discriminate between fully complementary and
10 single base mismatch targets (Orum, H., *et.al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research*, **1993**, 21, 5332-5336). The method utilizes the properties of PNA e.g. higher thermal stability, greater specificity when bound to complementary nucleic acid sequences than the corresponding deoxyribooligonucleotides and that PNAs are not recognized by DNA polymerase as primers. A PNA/DNA complex can effectively block the formation of a PCR product
15 when the PNA is targeted against the PCR primer site. This method is effective in blocking target sequences when two target sequences in the same assay differ by only one base pair. Compounds of the present invention having greater specificity than normal PNA are well suited for use in diagnostic assays of this type.

The following examples are merely illustrative of the present invention and should
20 not be considered limiting of the scope of the invention in any way. These examples and equivalents thereof will become more apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the present disclosure and the accompanying claims. The disclosures of each patent, patent application, and publication cited or described in this document are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

25 A synthesis of PNAs according to the present invention is discussed in detail below.

Synthesis of PNA Oligomers.

The principle of anchoring molecules during a reaction onto a solid matrix is known as Solid Phase Synthesis or Merrifield Synthesis (see Merrifield, *J. Am. Chem.*
30 *Soc.*, **1963**, 85, 2149 and *Science*, **1986**, 232, 341). Established methods for the stepwise or fragment-wise solid phase assembly of amino acids into peptides normally employ a

beaded matrix of cross-linked styrene-divinylbenzene copolymer. The cross-linked copolymer is formed by the pearl polymerization of styrene monomer to which is added a mixture of divinylbenzenes. Usually, 1-2% cross-linking is employed. Such a matrix may be used in solid phase PNA synthesis of the present invention (Figure 3).

5 More than fifty methods for initial functionalization of the solid phase have been described in connection with traditional solid phase peptide synthesis (see Barany and Merrifield in "The Peptides" Vol. 2, Academic Press, New York, 1979, pp. 1-284, and Stewart and Young, "Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis", 2nd Ed., Pierce Chemical Company, Illinois, 1984). Reactions for the introduction of chloromethyl functionality (Merrifield
10 resin; via a chloromethyl methyl ether/SnCl₄ reaction), aminomethyl functionality (via an N-hydroxymethylphthalimide reaction; Mitchell *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1976, 3795) and benzhydrylamino functionality (Pietta *et al.*, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1970, 650) are most widely used. Regardless of its nature, the purpose of introducing a functionality on the solid phase is to form an anchoring linkage between the copolymer solid support and the C-terminus
15 of the first amino acid to be coupled to the solid support. As will be recognized, anchoring linkages may also be formed between the solid support and the amino acid N-terminus. The "concentration" of a functional group present in the solid phase is generally expressed in millimoles per gram (mmol/g). Other reactive functionalities which have been initially introduced include 4-methylbenzhydrylamino and 4-methoxybenzhydrylamino groups. All
20 of these established methods are, in principle, useful within the context of the present invention.

A Preferred method for PNA synthesis employs aminomethyl as the initial functionality. Aminomethyl is particularly advantageous as a "spacer" or "handle" group because it forms amide bonds with a carboxylic acid group in nearly quantitative amounts.
25 A vast number of relevant spacer- or handle-forming bifunctional reagents have been described (see Barany *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Res.*, 1987, 30, 705). Representative bifunctional reagents include 4-(haloalkyl)aryl-lower alkanolic acids such as 4-(bromomethyl)phenylacetic acid; BOC-aminoacyl-4-(oxymethyl)aryl-lower alkanolic acids such as BOC-aminoacyl-4-(oxymethyl)phenylacetic acid; N-BOC-*p*-acylbenzhydrylamines
30 such as N-BOC-*p*-glutaroylbenzhydrylamine; N-BOC-4'-lower alkyl-*p*-acylbenzhydrylamines such as N-BOC-4'-methyl-*p*-glutaroylbenzhydrylamine; N-BOC-4'-lower alkoxy-*p*-acylbenzhydrylamines such as N-BOC-4'-methoxy-*p*-glutaroyl-

benzhydrylamine; and 4-hydroxymethylphenoxyacetic acid. One type of spacer group particularly relevant within the context of the present invention is the phenylacetamidomethyl (PAM) handle (Mitchell and Merrifield, *J. Org. Chem.*, **1976**, *41*, 2015) which, deriving from the electron withdrawing effect of the 4-phenylacetamidomethyl group, is about 100 times more stable than a benzyl ester linkage towards the BOC-amino deprotection reagent trifluoroacetic acid (TFA).

Certain functionalities (*e.g.*, benzhydrylamino, 4-methylbenzhydrylamino and 4-methoxybenzhydrylamino), which may be incorporated for the purpose of cleavage of a synthesized PNA chain from the solid support such that the C-terminal of the PNA chain is released as an amide, require no introduction of a spacer group. Any such functionality may advantageously be employed in the context of the present invention.

An alternative strategy concerning the introduction of spacer or handle groups is the so-called "preformed handle" strategy (see Tam *et al.*, *Synthesis*, **1979**, 955-957), which offers complete control over coupling of the first amino acid and excludes the possibility of complications arising from the presence of undesired functional groups not related to the peptide or PNA synthesis. In this strategy, spacer or handle groups, of the same type as described above, are reacted with the first amino acid desired to be bound to the solid support, the amino acid being N-protected and optionally protected at the other side chains which are not relevant with respect to the growth of the desired PNA chain. Thus, in those cases in which a spacer or handle group is desirable, the first amino acid to be coupled to the solid support can either be coupled to the free reactive end of a spacer group which has been bound to the initially introduced functionality (for example, an aminomethyl group) or can be reacted with the spacer-forming reagent. The space-forming reagent is then reacted with the initially introduced functionality. Other useful anchoring schemes include the "multidetachable" resins (see Tam *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1979**, 4935 and *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1980**, *102*, 611; Tam, *J. Org. Chem.*, **1985**, *50*, 5291), which provide more than one mode of release and thereby allow more flexibility in synthetic design.

Exemplary N-protecting groups are *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl (BOC) (Carpino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1957**, *79*, 4427; McKay, *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1957**, *79*, 4686; Anderson *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1957**, *79*, 6180) and the 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc) (Carpino *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1970**, *92*, 5748 and *J. Org. Chem.*, **1972**, *37*, 3404), Adoc (Hass *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1966**, *88*, 1988), Bpoc (Sieber *Helv. Chem. Acta.*,

1968, 51, 614), Mcb (Brady *et al.*, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1977, 42, 143), Bic (Kemp *et al.*, *Tetrahedron*, 1975, 4624), o-nitrophenylsulfonyl (Nps) (Zervas *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1963, 85, 3660) and dithiasuccinoyl (Dts) (Barany *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1977, 99, 7363) as well as other groups which are known to those skilled in the art. These amino-protecting groups, particularly those based on the widely-used urethane functionality, prohibit racemization (mediated by tautomerization of the readily formed oxazolinone (azlactone) intermediates (Goodman *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1964, 86, 2918)) during the coupling of most α -amino acids.

In addition to such amino-protecting groups, nonurethane-type of amino-protecting groups are also applicable when assembling PNA molecules. Thus, not only the above-mentioned amino-protecting groups (or those derived from any of these groups) are useful within the context of the present invention, but so are virtually any amino-protecting groups which largely fulfill the following requirements: (1) stable to mild acids (not significantly attacked by carboxyl groups); (2) stable to mild bases or nucleophiles (not significantly attacked by the amino group in question); (3) resistant to acylation (not significantly attacked by activated amino acids); (4) can be substantially removed without any serious side reaction; and (5) preserves the optical integrity, if any, of the incoming amino acid upon coupling.

The choice of side chain protecting groups, in general, depends on the choice of the amino-protecting group, because the side chain protecting group must withstand the conditions of the repeated amino deprotection cycles. This is true whether the overall strategy for chemically assembling PNA molecules relies on, for example, different acid stability of amino and side chain protecting groups (such as is the case for the above-mentioned "BOC-benzyl" approach) or employs an orthogonal, that is, chemoselective, protection scheme (such as is the case for the above-mentioned "FMOC-*t*-Bu" approach).

Following coupling of the first amino acid, the next stage of solid phase synthesis is the systematic elaboration of the desired PNA chain. This elaboration involves repeated deprotection/coupling cycles. A temporary protecting group, such as BOC or FMOC, on the last coupled amino acid is quantitatively removed by a suitable treatment, for example, by acidolysis, such as with trifluoroacetic acid in the case of BOC, or by base treatment, such as with piperidine in the case of FMOC, so as to liberate the N-terminal amine function.

The next desired N-protected amino acid is then coupled to the N-terminal of the last coupled amino acid. This coupling of the C-terminal of an amino acid with the N-terminal of the last coupled amino acid can be achieved in several ways. For example, it can be achieved by providing the incoming amino acid in a form with the carboxyl group activated by any of several methods, including the initial formation of an active ester derivative such as a 2,4,5-trichlorophenyl ester (Pless *et al.*, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **1963**, *46*, 1609), a phthalimido ester (Nefkens *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1961**, *83*, 1263), a pentachlorophenyl ester (Kupryszewski, *Rocz. Chem.*, **1961**, *35*, 595), a pentafluorophenyl ester (Kovacs *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1963**, *85*, 183), an *o*-nitrophenyl ester (Bodanzsky, *Nature*, **1955**, *175*, 685), an imidazole ester (Li *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1970**, *92*, 7608), and a 3-hydroxy-4-oxo-3,4-dihydroquinazoline (Dhbt-OH) ester (Konig *et al.*, *Chem. Ber.*, **1973**, *103*, 2024 and 2034), or the initial formation of an anhydride such as a symmetrical anhydride (Wieland *et al.*, *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl.*, **1971**, *10*, 336). Alternatively, the carboxyl group of the incoming amino acid can be reacted directly with the N-terminal of the last coupled amino acid with the assistance of a condensation reagent such as, for example, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (Sheehan *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1955**, *77*, 1067) or derivatives thereof. Benzotriazolyl N-oxy-trisdimethylaminophosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP), "Castro's reagent" (see Rivaille *et al.*, *Tetrahedron*, **1980**, *36*, 3413), is recommended when assembling PNA molecules containing secondary amino groups. Finally, activated PNA monomers analogous to the recently-reported amino acid fluorides (Carpino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1990**, *112*, 9651) hold considerable promise to be used in PNA synthesis as well.

Following the assembly of the desired PNA chain, including protecting groups, the next step will normally be deprotection of the amino acid moieties of the PNA chain and cleavage of the synthesized PNA from the solid support. These processes can take place substantially simultaneously, thereby providing the free PNA molecule in the desired form. Alternatively, in cases in which condensation of two separately synthesized PNA chains is to be carried out, it is possible, by choosing a suitable spacer group at the start of the synthesis, to cleave the desired PNA chains from their respective solid supports (both peptide chains still incorporating their side chain-protecting groups) and finally removing the side chain-protecting groups after, for example, coupling the two side chain-protected peptide chains to form a longer PNA chain.

In the above-mentioned "BOC-benzyl" protection scheme, the final deprotection of side chains and release of the PNA molecule from the solid support is most often carried out by the use of strong acids such as anhydrous HF (Sakakibara *et al.*, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.*, **1965**, *38*, 4921), boron tris (trifluoroacetate) (Pless *et al.*, *Helv. Chim. Acta*, **1973**, *46*, 1609) and sulfonic acids, such as trifluoromethanesulfonic acid and methanesulfonic acid (Yajima *et al.*, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Comm.*, **1974**, 107). A strong acid (*e.g.*, anhydrous HF) deprotection method may produce very reactive carbocations that may lead to alkylation and acylation of sensitive residues in the PNA chain. Such side reactions are only partly avoided by the presence of scavengers such as anisole, phenol, dimethyl sulfide, and mercaptoethanol. Thus, the sulfide-assisted acidolytic S_N2 deprotection method (Tam *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1983**, *105*, 6442 and *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1986**, *108*, 5242), the so-called "low" method, which removes the precursors of harmful carbocations to form inert sulfonium salts, is frequently employed in peptide and PNA synthesis. Other methods for deprotection and/or final cleavage of the PNA-solid support bond may include base-catalyzed alcoholysis (Barton *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1973**, *95*, 4501), ammonolysis, hydrazinolysis (Bodanszky *et al.*, *Chem. Ind.*, **1964** 1423), hydrogenolysis (Jones, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1977** 2853 and Schlatter *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1977** 2861)) and photolysis (Rich and Gurwara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1975** *97*, 1575)).

Finally, in contrast with the chemical synthesis of conventional peptides, stepwise chain building of achiral PNAs such as those based on aminoethylglycyl backbone units can start either from the N-terminus or the C-terminus. Those skilled in the art will recognize that synthesis commencing at the C-terminus typically employ protected amine groups and free or activated acid groups, and syntheses commencing at the N-terminus typically employ protected acid groups and free or activated amine groups.

Based on the recognition that most operations are identical in the synthetic cycles of solid phase peptide synthesis (as is also the case for solid phase PNA synthesis), a new matrix, PEPS, was recently introduced (Berg *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1989**, *111*, 8024 and International Patent Application WO 90/02749) to facilitate the preparation of a large number of peptides. This matrix is comprised of a polyethylene (PE) film with pendant long-chain polystyrene (PS) grafts (molecular weight on the order of 10⁶ Daltons). The loading capacity of the film is as high as that of a beaded matrix, but PEPS has the additional flexibility to suit multiple syntheses simultaneously. Thus, in a new

configuration for solid phase peptide synthesis, the PEPS film is fashioned in the form of discrete, labeled sheets, each serving as an individual compartment. During all the identical steps of the synthetic cycles, the sheets are kept together in a single reaction vessel to permit concurrent preparation of a multitude of peptides at a rate close to that of a single peptide synthesis by conventional methods. It is believed that the PEPS film support, comprising linker or spacer groups adapted to the particular chemistry will be particularly valuable in the synthesis of multiple PNA molecules. The synthesis of PNAs are conceptually simple because only four different reaction compartments are normally required, one for each of the four "pseudo-nucleotide" units. The PEPS film support has been successfully tested in a number of PNA syntheses carried out in a parallel and substantially simultaneous fashion. The yield and quality of the products obtained from PEPS are comparable to those obtained by using the traditional polystyrene bead support. Also, experiments with other geometries of the PEPS polymer, for example, non-woven felt, knitted net, sticks and microwellplates, have not indicated any limitations of the synthetic efficacy.

Two other methods for the simultaneous synthesis of large numbers of peptides also apply to the preparation of multiple, different PNA molecules. The first of these methods (Geysen *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **1984**, *81*, 3998) utilizes acrylic acid-grafted polyethylene-rods and 96-microtiter wells to immobilize the growing peptide chains and to perform the compartmentalized synthesis. While effective, this method is only applicable on a microgram scale. The second method (Houghten, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **1985**, *82*, 5131) utilizes a "tea bag" containing traditionally-used polymer beads. Other methods for multiple peptide or PNA synthesis in the context of the present invention include the simultaneous use of two different supports with different densities (Tregear in *"Chemistry and Biology of Peptides"*, J. Meienhofer, Ed., Ann Arbor Sci. Publ., Ann Arbor, **1972**, pp. 175-178), combining reaction vessels via a manifold (Gorman, *Anal. Biochem.*, **1984**, *136*, 397), multicolumn solid phase synthesis (Krchnak *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Res.*, **1989**, *33*, 209, and Holm and Meldal in *"Proceedings of the 20th European Peptide Symposium"*, G. Jung and E. Bayer, Eds., Walter de Gruyter & Co., Berlin, **1989**, pp. 208-210) and the use of cellulose paper (Eichler *et al.*, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.*, **1989**, *54*, 1746).

Conventional cross-linked styrene/divinylbenzene copolymer matrix and the PEPS

support are preferred in the context of solid phase PNA synthesis. Other exemplary solid supports include (1) particles based upon copolymers of dimethylacrylamide cross-linked with N,N'-bisacryloylethylenediamine, (2) solid supports based on silica-containing particles such as porous glass beads and silica gel, (3) composites that contain two major ingredients: a resin and another material that is also substantially inert to the reaction conditions employed (see Scott *et al.*, *J. Chrom. Sci.*, **1971**, 9, 577; Kent and Merrifield, *Israel J. Chem.*, **1978**, 17, 243; and van Rietschoten in "*Peptides 1974*", Y. Wolman, Ed., Wiley and Sons, New York, **1975**, pp. 113-116) and (4) contiguous solid supports other than PEPS, such as cotton sheets (Lebl and Eichler, *Peptide Res.*, **1989**, 2, 232) and hydroxypropylacrylate-coated polypropylene membranes (Daniels *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1989**, 4345).

Whether manually or automatically operated, solid phase PNA synthesis, in the context of the present invention, is normally performed batchwise. However, most of the syntheses may be carried out equally well in the continuous-flow mode, where the support is packed into columns (Bayer *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1970**, 4503; and Scott *et al.*, *J. Chromatogr. Sci.*, **1971**, 9, 577). With respect to continuous-flow solid phase synthesis, the rigid poly(dimethylacrylamide)-Kieselguhr support (Atherton *et al.*, *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*, **1981**, 1151) appears to be particularly useful. Another useful configuration is the one worked out for the standard copoly(styrene-1%-divinylbenzene) support (Krcnak *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1987**, 4469).

While the solid phase technique is preferred in the present invention, other methodologies or combinations thereof may also be used. Exemplary methodologies include (1) the classical solution phase methods for peptide synthesis (Bodanszky, "*Principles of Peptide Synthesis*", Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, **1984**), either by step-wise assembly or by segment/fragment condensation, (2) the "liquid phase" strategy, which utilizes soluble polymeric supports such as linear polystyrene (Shemyakin *et al.*, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1965**, 2323) and polyethylene glycol (PEG) (Mutter and Bayer, *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl.*, **1974**, 13, 88), (3) random polymerization (Orian, "*Principles of Polymerization*", McGraw-Hill, New York, **1970**) yielding mixtures of many molecular weights ("polydisperse") peptide or PNA molecules and (4) a technique based on the use of polymer-supported amino acid active esters (Fridkin *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1965**, 87, 4646), sometimes referred to as "inverse Merrifield synthesis" or "polymeric reagent synthesis". In addition, it is envisaged that PNA molecules may be assembled

- 26 -

enzymatically by enzymes such as proteases or derivatives thereof with novel specificities (obtained, for example, by artificial means such as protein engineering). Also, one can envision the development of "PNA ligases" for the condensation of a number of PNA fragments into very large PNA molecules. Also, since antibodies can be generated to
5 virtually any molecule of interest, the recently developed catalytic antibodies (abzymes), discovered simultaneously by Tramontano *et al.*, *Science*, **1986**, 234, 1566 and Pollack *et al.*, *Science*, **1986**, 234, 1570, should also be considered as potential candidates for assembling PNA molecules. Thus, there has been considerable success in producing abzymes catalyzing acyl-transfer reactions (see Shokat *et al.*, *Nature*, **1989**, 338, 269, and
10 references therein). Finally, completely artificial enzymes, very recently pioneered by Hahn *et al.* (*Science*, **1990**, 248, 1544), may be developed for PNA synthesis. The design of generally applicable enzymes, ligases, and catalytic antibodies, capable of mediating specific coupling reactions, should be more readily achieved for PNA synthesis than for "normal" peptide synthesis since PNA molecules will often be comprised of only four different amino
15 acids (one for each of the four native nucleobases).

Likely therapeutic and prophylactic targets include herpes simplex virus (HSV), human papillomavirus (HPV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), candida albicans, influenza virus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), intercellular adhesion molecules (ICAM), 5-lipoxygenase (5-LO), phospholipase A₂ (PLA₂), protein kinase C (PKC), and the *ras*
20 oncogene. Potential treatment of such targeting include ocular, labial, genital, and systemic herpes simplex I and II infections; genital warts; cervical cancer; common warts; Kaposi's sarcoma; AIDS; skin and systemic fungal infections; flu; pneumonia; retinitis and pneumonitis in immunosuppressed patients; mononucleosis; ocular, skin and systemic inflammation; cardiovascular disease; cancer; asthma; psoriasis; cardiovascular collapse;
25 cardiac infarction; gastrointestinal disease; kidney disease; rheumatoid arthritis; osteoarthritis; acute pancreatitis; septic shock; and Crohn's disease.

In general, for therapeutic or prophylactic treatment, a patient suspected of requiring such therapy is administered a compound of the present invention, commonly in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, in amounts and for periods of time which will vary
30 depending upon the nature of the particular disease, its severity and the patient's overall condition. The peptide nucleic acids of this invention can be formulated in a pharmaceutical composition, which may include carriers, thickeners, diluents, buffers,

preservatives, surface active agents and the like. Pharmaceutical compositions may also include one or more active ingredients such as antimicrobial agents, anti-inflammatory agents, anesthetics and the like, in addition to the peptide nucleic acids.

5 The pharmaceutical composition may be administered in a number of ways depending upon whether local or systemic treatment is desired, and upon the area to be treated. Administration may be topical (including ophthalmic, vaginal, rectal, intranasal, transdermal), oral or parenteral, for example, by intravenous drip, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal or intramuscular injection or intrathecal or intraventricular administration.

10 Formulations for topical administration may include transdermal patches, ointments, lotions, creams, gels, drops, suppositories, sprays, liquids and powders. Conventional pharmaceutical carriers, aqueous, powder or oily bases, thickeners and the like may be necessary or desirable. Coated condoms, gloves and the like may also be useful.

15 Compositions for oral administration include powders or granules, suspensions or solutions in water or non-aqueous media, capsules, sachets, or tablets. Thickeners, flavorings, diluents, emulsifiers, dispersing aids or binders may be added.

Compositions for intrathecal or intraventricular administration may include sterile aqueous solutions which may also contain buffers, diluents and other suitable additives.

Formulations for parenteral administration may include sterile aqueous solutions which may also contain buffers, diluents and other suitable additives.

20 Dosing is dependent on severity and responsiveness of the condition to be treated, but will normally be one or more doses per day, with the course of treatment lasting from several days to several months or until a cure is effected or a diminution of disease state is achieved. Persons of ordinary skill can easily determine optimum dosages, dosing methodologies and repetition rates.

25 The present invention also pertains to the advantageous use of PNA molecules in solid phase biochemistry (see "*Solid Phase Biochemistry - Analytical and Synthetic Aspects*", W. H. Scouten, Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1983), notably solid phase biosystems, especially bioassays or solid phase techniques for diagnostic detection/quantitation or affinity purification of complementary nucleic acids (see "*Affinity Chromatography - A Practical Approach*", P. D. G. Dean, W. S. Johnson and F. A. Middle, Eds., IRL Press Ltd., Oxford, 1986; "*Nucleic Acid Hybridization - A Practical Approach*", B. D. Harnes and S. J. Higgins, IRL Press Ltd., Oxford, 1987). Current methods for performing such

30

bioassays or purification techniques almost exclusively utilize "normal" or slightly modified oligonucleotides either physically adsorbed or bound through a substantially permanent covalent anchoring linkage to beaded solid supports such as cellulose, glass beads, including those with controlled porosity (Mizutani *et al.*, *J. Chromatogr.*, **1986**, 356, 202),
5 "Sephadex", "Sephacrose", agarose, polyacrylamide, porous particulate alumina, hydroxyalkyl methacrylate gels, diol-bonded silica, porous ceramics, or contiguous materials such as filter discs of nylon and nitrocellulose.

All the above-mentioned methods are applicable within the context of the present invention. However, when possible, covalent linkage method is preferred over the
10 physical adsorption method, because the latter approach may result in some of the immobilized molecules being washed out (desorbed) during the hybridization or affinity process. The severity of this problem will, of course, depend to a large extent on the rate at which equilibrium between adsorbed and "free" species is established. In certain cases it may be virtually impossible to perform a quantitative assay with acceptable accuracy
15 and/or reproducibility. The amount of loss of adsorbed species during the treatment of the support with body fluids, aqueous reagents or washing media will, in general, be expected to be most pronounced for species of relatively low molecular weight.

In contrast with oligonucleotides, PNA molecules are easier to attach onto solid supports because they contain strong nucleophilic and/or electrophilic centers. In addition,
20 a direct assembly of oligonucleotides onto solid supports suffers from an extremely low loading of the immobilized molecule (Beaucage and Caruthers, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1981**, 22, 1859; and Caruthers, *Science*, **1985**, 232, 281). In addition, because it uses the alternative phosphite triester method (Letsinger and Mahadevan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1976**, 98, 3655), which is suited for solid supports with a high surface/loading capacity, only relatively short
25 oligonucleotides can be obtained.

As for conventional solid phase peptide synthesis, however, the latter supports are excellent materials for building up immobilized PNA molecules. It allows the side chain-protecting groups to be removed from the synthesized PNA chain without cleaving the anchoring linkage holding the chain to the solid support. They also can be loaded onto
30 solid supports in large amounts, thus further increasing the capacity of the solid phase technique. Furthermore, certain types of studies concerning the use of PNA in solid phase biochemistry can be conducted, facilitated, or greatly accelerated by use of the

- 29 -

recently-reported "light-directed, spatially addressable, parallel chemical synthesis" technology (Fodor *et al.*, *Science*, 1991, 251, 767), a technique that combines solid phase chemistry and photolithography to produce thousands of highly diverse, but identifiable, permanently immobilized compounds (such as peptides) in a substantially simultaneous way.

Synthesis of monomer subunits.

The monomer subunits preferably are synthesized by the general scheme outlined in Figure 4. This involves preparation of either the methyl or ethyl ester of (BOC-aminoethyl)glycine, by a protection/deprotection procedure as described in Examples 20-22.

10 The synthesis of thymine monomer is described in Examples 23-24, and the synthesis of protected cytosine monomer is described in Example 25.

The synthesis of a protected adenine monomer involves alkylation of adenine with ethyl bromoacetate (Example 26) and verification of the position of substitution (*i.e.* position 9) by X-ray crystallography. The N⁶-amino group is then protected with the benzyloxycarbonyl group by the use of the reagent N-ethyl-benzyloxycarbonylimidazole tetrafluoroborate (Example 27). Simple hydrolysis of the product ester (Example 28) gave N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-9-carboxymethyl adenine, which was used in the standard procedure (Examples 29-30). The adenine monomer has been built into two different PNA oligomers (Examples 52, 53, 56 and 57).

20 For the synthesis of the protected G-monomer, the starting material, 2-amino-6-chloropurine, was alkylated with bromoacetic acid (Example 31) and the chlorine atom was then substituted with a benzyloxy group (Example 32). The resulting acid was coupled to the (BOC-aminoethyl)glycine methyl ester (from Example 22) with agent PyBropTM, and the resulting ester was hydrolysed (Example 33). The O⁶-benzyl group was removed in the

25 final HF-cleavage step in the synthesis of the PNA-oligomer. Cleavage was verified by mass spectrum of the final PNA oligomer, upon incorporation into a PNA oligomer using diisopropyl carbodiimide as the condensation agent (Examples 51 and 56).

Additional objects, advantages, and novel features of the present invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art upon examination of the following examples thereof, which are not intended to be limiting.

30

General Remarks.

The following abbreviations are used in the experimental examples: DMF, N,N-dimethylformamide; Tyr, tyrosine; Lys, lysine; DCC, N,N-dicyclohexyl-carbodiimide; DCU, N,N-dicyclohexylurea; THF, tetrahydrofuran; aeg, N-acetyl(2'-aminoethyl)glycine; Pfp, pentafluorophenyl; BOC, *t*-butoxycarbonyl; Z, benzyloxycarbonyl; NMR, nuclear magnetic resonance; s, singlet; d, doublet; dd, doublet of doublets; t, triplet; q, quartet; m, multiplet; b, broad; δ , chemical shift; ppm, parts per million (chemical shift).

NMR spectra were recorded on either a JEOL FX 90Q spectrometer, or a Bruker 250 MHz with tetramethylsilane as an internal standard. Mass spectrometry was performed on a MassLab VG 12-250 quadropole instrument fitted with a VG FAB source and probe. Melting points were recorded on a Buchi melting point apparatus and are uncorrected. N,N-Dimethylformamide was dried over 4 Å molecular sieves, distilled and stored over 4 Å molecular sieves. Pyridine (HPLC quality) was dried and stored over 4 Å molecular sieves. Other solvents used were either the highest quality obtainable or were distilled prior to use. Dioxane was passed through basic alumina prior to use. BOC-anhydride, 4-nitrophenol, methyl bromoacetate, benzyloxycarbonyl chloride, pentafluorophenol were all obtained from Aldrich Chemical Company. Thymine, cytosine, adenine were all obtained from Sigma.

Thin layer chromatography (tlc) was performed using the following solvent systems: (1) chloroform:triethyl amine:methanol, 7:1:2; (2) methylene chloride:methanol, 9:1; (3) chloroform:methanol:acetic acid 85:10:5. Spots were visualized by UV (254 nm) and/or spraying with a ninhydrin solution (3 g ninhydrin in 1000 mL of 1-butanol and 30 mL of acetic acid), after heating at 120°C for 5 minutes and, after spraying, heating again.

EXAMPLE 1**25 Synthesis of *tert*-Butyl-4-nitrophenyl carbonate.**

Sodium carbonate (29.14 g, 0.275 mol) and 4-nitrophenol (12.75 g, 91.6 mmol) were mixed with dioxane (250 mL). BOC-anhydride (2 g, 91.6 mmol) was transferred to the mixture with dioxane (50 mL). The mixture was refluxed for 1 h, cooled to 0°C, filtered and concentrated to a third of the volume, and then poured into water (350 mL) at 0°C. After stirring for 0.5 h, the product was collected by filtration, washed with water, and then dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield 21.3 g (97%). M.p. 73.0-74.5°C (lit. 78.5-

79.5°C). Anal. for $C_{11}H_{13}NO_5$ found(calc.) C: 55.20(55.23) H: 5.61(5.48) N: 5.82(5.85).

EXAMPLE 2

Synthesis of (N'-BOC-2'-aminoethyl)glycine (2).

The title compound was prepared by a modification of the procedure by Heimer
5 *et al.* (*Int. J. Pept.*, 1984, 23, 203-211). N-(2-Aminoethyl)glycine (1, 3 g, 25.4 mmol) was
dissolved in water (50 mL), dioxane (50 mL) was added, and the pH was adjusted to 11.2
with 2 N sodium hydroxide. *tert*-Butyl-4-nitrophenyl carbonate (7.29 g, 30.5 mmol) was
dissolved in dioxane (40 mL) and added dropwise over a period of 2 h, during which time
the pH was maintained at 11.2 with 2 N sodium hydroxide. The pH was adjusted
10 periodically to 11.2 for three more hours and then the solution was allowed to stand
overnight. The solution was cooled to 0°C and the pH was carefully adjusted to 3.5 with
0.5 M hydrochloric acid. The aqueous solution was washed with chloroform (3x200 mL),
the pH adjusted to 9.5 with 2N sodium hydroxide and the solution was evaporated to
dryness, *in vacuo* (14 mm Hg). The residue was extracted with DMF (25 + 2x10 mL) and
15 the extracts filtered to remove excess salt. This results in a solution of the title compound
in about 60% yield and greater than 95% purity by tlc (system 1 and visualised with
ninhydrin, $R_f=0.3$). The solution was used in the following preparations of BOC-aeg
derivates without further purification.

EXAMPLE 3

20 Synthesis of N¹-Carboxymethylthymine (4).

This procedure is different from the literature synthesis, but is easier, gives higher
yields, and leaves no unreacted thymine in the product. To a suspension of thymine (3, 40
g, 0.317 mol) and potassium carbonate (87.7 g, 0.634 mmol) in DMF (900 mL) was added
methyl bromoacetate (30 mL, 0.317 mmol). The mixture was stirred vigorously overnight
25 under nitrogen. The mixture was filtered and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The solid
residue was treated with water (300 mL) and 4 N hydrochloric acid (12 mL), stirred for 15
minutes at 0°C, filtered, and washed with water (2x75 mL). The precipitate was treated
with water (120 mL) and 2 N sodium hydroxide (60 mL), and was refluxed for 10 minutes.
The mixture was cooled to 0°C, filtered, and title compound was precipitated by the
30 addition of 4 N hydrochloric acid (70 mL). The yield after drying, *in vacuo* over sicapent

was 37.1 g (64%). ¹H-NMR: (90 MHz; DMSO-d₆): 11.33 ppm (s, 1H, NH); 7.49 (d, J=0.92 Hz, 1H, ArH); 4.38 (s, 2H, CH₂); 1.76 (d, J=0.92 Hz, T-CH₃).

EXAMPLE 4

Synthesis of N¹-Carboxymethylthymine pentafluorophenyl ester (5).

5 N¹-Carboxymethylthymine (4, 10 g, 54.3 mmol) and pentafluorophenol (10 g, 54.3 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (100 mL) and cooled to 5°C in ice water. DCC (13.45 g, 65.2 mmol) was added. When the temperature decreased below 5°C, the ice bath was removed and the mixture was stirred for 3 h at ambient temperature. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed twice with DMF (2x10 mL). The combined filtrate
10 was poured into ether (1400 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Petroleum ether (1400 mL) was added and the mixture was left overnight. The title compound was isolated by filtration and washed thoroughly with petroleum ether. Yield: 14.8 g (78%). The product was pure enough to carry out the next reaction, but an analytical sample was obtained by recrystallization from 2-propanol. M.p. 200.5-206°C Anal. for C₁₃H₇F₅N₂O₄. Found(calc.)
15 C: 44.79(44.59); H: 2.14(2.01) N: 8.13(8.00). FAB-MS: 443 (M+1+glycerol), 351 (M+1). ¹H-NMR (90 MHz; DMSO-d₆): 11.52 ppm (s, 1H, NH); 7.64 (s, 1H, ArH); 4.99 (s, 2H, CH₂); 1.76 (s, 3H, CH₃).

EXAMPLE 5

Synthesis of 1-(BOC-aeg)thymine (6).

20 To a DMF solution of product of Example 2 was added triethyl amine (7.08 mL, 50.8 mmol) followed by N¹-carboxymethylthymine pentafluorophenyl ester (5, 4.45 g, 12.7 mmol). The resultant solution was stirred for 1 h. The solution was cooled to 0°C and treated with cation exchange material ("Dowex 50W X-8", 40 g) for 20 minutes. The cation exchange material was removed by filtration, washed with dichloromethane (2x15
25 mL), and dichloromethane (150 mL) was added. The resulting solution was washed with saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, first by a water aspirator and then by an oil pump. The residue was shaken with water (50 mL) and evaporated to dryness. This procedure was repeated again. The residue then was dissolved in methanol (75 mL) and poured into ether (600 mL) and petroleum
30 ether (1400 mL). After stirring overnight, the white solid was isolated by filtration and was

washed with petroleum ether. Drying over sicapent, *in vacuo*, gave 3.50 g (71.7%) of the title compound. M.p. 142-147°C. Anal. for $C_{16}H_{24}N_4O_7$. Found(calc.) C: 49.59(50.00) H: 6.34(6.29) N: 14.58(14.58). 1H -NMR (250 MHz, DMSO- d_6): Due to the limited rotation around the secondary amide bond several of the signals were doubled in the ratio 2:1 (indicated in the list by mj. for major and mi. for minor): 12.73 ppm (b, 1H, CO_2H); 11.27 ppm (s, mj., imide); 11.25 ppm (s, mi., imide); 7.30 ppm (s, mj., ArH); 7.26 ppm (s, mi., ArH); 6.92 ppm (unres. t, mj., BOC-NH); 6.73 ppm (unres. t, mi., BOC-NH); 4.64 ppm (s, mj., T- CH_2 -CO-); 4.47 ppm (s, mi., T- CH_2 -CO-); 4.19 ppm (s, mi., $CONRCH_2CO_2H$); 3.97 ppm (s, mj., $CONRCH_2CO_2H$); 3.41-2.89 ppm (unres. m, $-CH_2CH_2-$ and water); 1.75 ppm (s, 3H, T- CH_3); 1.38 ppm (s, 9H, *t*-Bu). ^{13}C -NMR: 170.68 ppm (CO); 170.34 (CO); 167.47 (CO); 167.08 (CO); 164.29 (CO); 150.9 ($C5''$); 141.92 ($C6''$); 108.04 ($C2'$); 77.95 and 77.68 (Thy- CH_2CO); 48.96, 47.45 and 46.70 ($-CH_2CH_2-$ and NCH_2CO_2H); 37.98 (Thy- CH_3); 28.07 (*t*-Bu). FAB-MS: 407 ($M+Na^+$); 385 ($M+H^+$).

EXAMPLE 6

15 Synthesis of 1-(BOC-aeg)thymine pentafluorophenyl ester (7, BOC-Taeg.OPfp).

1-(BOC-aeg)thymine (6) (2 g, 5.20 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL) and methylene chloride (15 mL) was added. Pentafluorophenol (1.05 g, 5.72 mmol) was added and the solution was cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. DDC then was added (1.29 g, 6.24 mmol) and the ice bath was removed after 2 minutes. After 3 h of stirring at ambient temperature, the precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed with methylene chloride. The combined filtrate was washed twice with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate and once with saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The solid residue was dissolved in dioxane (150 mL) and poured into water (200 mL) at 0°C. The title compound was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield: 2.20 g (77%). An analytical sample was obtained by recrystallisation from 2-propanol. M.p. 174-175.5°C. Analysis for $C_{22}H_{23}N_4O_7F_5$, found(calc.): C: 48.22(48.01); H: 4.64(4.21); N: 9.67(10.18). 1H -NMR (250 MHz, $CDCl_3$): Due to the limited rotation around the secondary amide bond several of the signals were doubled in the ratio 6:1 (indicated in the list by mj. for major and mi. for minor): 7.01 ppm (s, mi., ArH); 6.99 ppm (s, mj., ArH); 5.27 ppm (unres. t, BOC-NH); 4.67 ppm (s, mj., T- CH_2 -CO-); 4.60 ppm (s, mi., T- CH_2 -CO-); 4.45 ppm (s, mj.,

CONRCH₂CO₂Pfp); 4.42 ppm (s, mi., CONRCH₂CO₂Pfp); 3.64 ppm (t, 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂-); 3.87 ppm ("q", 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂-); 1.44(s,9H,t-Bu). FAB-MS: 551 (10; M+1); 495 (10; M+1-tBu); 451 (80; -BOC).

EXAMPLE 7

5 Synthesis of N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl cytosine (9).

Over a period of about 1 h, benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (52 mL, 0.36 mol) was added dropwise to a suspension of cytosine (8, 20 g, 0.18 mol) in dry pyridine (1000 mL) at 0°C under nitrogen in oven-dried equipment. The solution then was stirred overnight, after which the pyridine suspension was evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Water (200 mL) and 4 N hydrochloric acid were added to reach pH ~1. The resulting white precipitate was filtered off, washed with water and partially dried by air suction. The moist precipitate was refluxed with absolute ethanol (500 mL) for 10 minutes, cooled to 0°C, filtered, washed thoroughly with ether, and dried, *in vacuo*. Yield 24.7 g (54%). M.p.>250°C. Anal. for C₁₂H₁₁N₃O₃. Found(calc.); C: 58.59(58.77); H: 4.55(4.52); N: 17.17(17.13). No NMR spectra were recorded since it was not possible to get the product dissolved.

EXAMPLE 8

Synthesis of N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-N¹-carboxymethyl cytosine (10).

In a three-necked round bottom flask equipped with mechanical stirring and nitrogen inlet was placed methyl bromacetate (7.82 mL, 82.6 mmol) and a suspension of N⁴-benzyloxycarbonyl-cytosine (9, 21 g, 82.6 mmol) and potassium carbonate (11.4 g, 82.6 mmol) in dry DMF (900 mL). The mixture was stirred vigorously overnight, filtered, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Water (300 mL) and 4 N hydrochloric acid (10 mL) were added, the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes at 0°C, filtered, and washed with water (2x75 mL). The isolated precipitate was treated with water (120 mL), 2N sodium hydroxide (60 mL), stirred for 30 minutes, filtered, cooled to 0°C, and 4 N hydrochloric acid (35 mL) was added. The title compound was isolated by filtration, washed thoroughly with water, recrystallized from methanol (1000 mL) and washed thoroughly with ether. This afforded 7.70 g (31%) of pure title compound. The mother liquor from recrystallization was reduced to a volume of 200 mL and cooled to 0°C. This afforded an additional 2.30 g of a material that was pure by tlc but had a reddish color. M.p. 266-274°C. Anal. for C₁₄H₁₃N₃O₅.

- 35 -

Found(calc.); C: 55.41(55.45); H: 4.23(4.32); N: 14.04(13.86). ¹H-NMR (90 MHz; DMSO-d₆): 8.02 ppm (d, J=7.32Hz, 1H, H-6); 7.39 (s, 5H, Ph); 7.01 (d, J=7.32Hz, 1H, H-5); 5.19 (s, 2H, PhCH₂-); 4.52 (s, 2H).

EXAMPLE 9

5 Synthesis of N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-N¹-carboxymethyl-cytosine pentafluorophenyl ester (11).

N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-N¹-carboxymethyl-cytosine (**10**, 4 g, 13.2 mmol) and pentafluorophenol (2.67 g, 14.5 mmol) were mixed with DMF (70 mL), cooled to 0°C with ice-water, and DCC (3.27 g, 15.8 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 3
10 minutes and the mixture was stirred for 3 h at room temperature. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration, washed with DMF, and the filtrate was evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo* (0.2 mm Hg). The solid residue was treated with methylene chloride (250 mL), stirred vigorously for 15 minutes, filtered, washed twice with diluted sodium hydrogen carbonate and once with saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and
15 evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The solid residue was recrystallized from 2-propanol (150 mL) and the crystals were washed thoroughly with ether. Yield 3.40 g (55%). M.p. 241-245°C. Anal. for C₂₀H₁₂N₃F₅O₅. Found(calc.); C: 51.56(51.18); H: 2.77(2.58); N: 9.24(8.95). ¹H-NMR (90 MHz; CDCl₃): 7.66 ppm (d, J=7.63Hz, 1H, H-6); 7.37 (s, 5H, Ph); 7.31 (d, J=7.63Hz, 1H, H-5); 5.21 (s, 2H, PhCH₂-); 4.97 (s, 2H, NCH₂-). FAB-MS: 470
20 (M+1)

EXAMPLE 10

Synthesis of N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-1-BOC-aeg-cytosine (**12**).

To a solution of (N-BOC-2-aminoethyl)glycine (**2**) in DMF, prepared as described above, was added triethyl amine (7 mL, 50.8 mmol) and N⁴-benzyloxycarbonyl-N¹-
25 carboxymethyl-cytosine pentafluorophenyl ester (**11**, 2.7 g, 5.75 mmol). After stirring the solution for 1 h at room temperature, methylene chloride (150 mL), saturated sodium chloride (250 mL), and 4 N hydrochloric acid to pH ~1 were added. The organic layer was separated and washed twice with saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, first with a water aspirator and then with an oil pump.
30 The oily residue was treated with water (25 mL) and was again evaporated to dryness, *in*

- 36 -

vacuo. This procedure then was repeated. The oily residue (2.8 g) was then dissolved in methylene chloride (100 mL), petroleum ether (250 mL) was added, and the mixture was stirred overnight. The title compound was isolated by filtration and washed with petroleum ether. Tlc (system 1) indicated substantial quantities of pentafluorophenol, but no attempt
5 was made to remove it. Yield: 1.72 g (59%). M.p. 156°C(decomp.). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃): Due to the limited rotation around the secondary amide bond several of the signals were doubled in the ratio 2:1 (indicated in the list by mj. for major and mi. for minor): 7.88 ppm (dd, 1H, H-6); 7.39 (m, 5H, Ph); 7.00 (dd, 1H, H-5); 6.92 (b, 1H, BOC-NH); 6.74 (b, 1H, ZNH)-?; 5.19 (s, 2H, Ph-CH₂); 4.81 ppm (s, mj., Cyt-CH₂-CO-); 4.62 ppm (s,
10 mi., Cyt-CH₂-CO-); 4.23 (s, mi., CONRCH₂CO₂H); 3.98 ppm (s, mj., CONRCH₂CO₂H); 3.42-3.02 (unres. m, -CH₂CH₂- and water); 1.37 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu). FAB-MS: 504 (M+1); 448 (M+1-*t*-Bu).

EXAMPLE 11

Synthesis of N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-1-BOC-aeg-cytosine pentafluorophenyl ester (13).

15 N⁴-Benzyloxycarbonyl-1-BOC-aeg-cytosine (12, 1.5 g, 2.98 mmol) and pentafluorophenol (548 mg, 2.98 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL). Methylene chloride (10 mL) was added, the reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C in an ice bath, and DCC (676 mg, 3.28 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 3 minutes and the mixture was stirred for 3 h at ambient temperature. The precipitate was isolated by
20 filtration and washed once with methylene chloride. The precipitate was dissolved in boiling dioxane (150 mL) and the solution was cooled to 15°C, whereby DCU precipitated. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and the resulting filtrate was poured into water (250 mL) at 0°C. The title compound was isolated by filtration, was washed with water, and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield 1.30 g (65%). Analysis for C₂₉H₂₈N₅O₈F₅.
25 Found(calc.); C: 52.63(52.02); H: 4.41(4.22); N: 10.55(10.46). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz; DMSO-d₆): showed essentially the spectrum of the above acid, most probably due to hydrolysis of the ester. FAB-MS: 670 (M+1); 614 (M+1-*t*-Bu).

EXAMPLE 12

Synthesis of 4-chlorocarboxy-9-chloroacridine.

30 4-Carboxyacridone (6.25 g, 26.1 mmol), thionyl chloride (25 mL) and 4 drops of

- 37 -

DMF were heated gently under a flow of nitrogen until all solid material had dissolved. The solution then was refluxed for 40 minutes. The solution was cooled and excess thionyl chloride was removed *in vacuo*. The last traces of thionyl chloride were removed by coevaporation with dry benzene (dried over Na-Pb) twice. The remaining yellow powder
5 was used directly in the next reaction.

EXAMPLE 13

Synthesis of 4-(5-methoxycarbonylpentylamidocarbonyl)-9-chloroacridine.

Methyl 6-aminohexanoate hydrochloride (4.7 g, 25.9 mmol) was dissolved in methylene chloride (90 mL), cooled to 0°C, triethyl amine (15 mL) was added, and the
10 resulting solution was then immediately added to the acid chloride from Example 12. The round bottom flask containing the acid chloride was cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 30 minutes at 0°C and 3 h at room temperature. The resulting mixture was filtered to remove the remaining solids, which were washed with methylene chloride (20 mL). The reddish-brown methylene chloride filtrate was
15 subsequently washed twice with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, once with saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. To the resulting oily residue was added dry benzene (35 mL) and ligroin (60-80°C, dried over Na-Pb). The mixture was heated to reflux. Activated carbon and celite were added and the mixture refluxed for 3 minutes. After filtration, the title compound crystallised upon
20 cooling with magnetic stirring. It was isolated by filtration and washed with petroleum ether. The product was stored over solid potassium hydroxide. Yield 5 g (50%).

EXAMPLE 14

Synthesis of 4-(5-methoxycarbonylpentyl)amidocarbonyl-9-[6'-(4''-nitrobenzamido)-hexylamino]-aminoacridine.

25 4-(5-Methoxycarbonylpentylamidocarbonyl)-9-chloroacridine (1.3 g, 3.38 mmol) and phenol (5 g) were heated to 80°C for 30 minutes under a flow of nitrogen, after which 6-(4'-nitrobenzamido)-1-hexylamine (897 mg, 3.38 mmol) was added. The temperature was then increased to 120°C for 2 h. The reaction mixture was cooled and methylene chloride (80 mL) was added. The resulting solution was washed three times with 2 N
30 sodium hydroxide (60 mL portions) and once with water, dried over magnesium sulfate,

- 38 -

and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The resulting red oil (1.8 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (40 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Ether (120 mL) was added and the resultant solution was stirred overnight. This resulted in a mixture of solid material and an oil. The solid was isolated by filtration. The solid and the oil were re-dissolved in methylene chloride (80 mL) and added dropwise to cold ether (150 mL). After 20 minutes of stirring, the title compound was isolated by filtration as orange crystals. The product was washed with ether and dried *in vacuo* over potassium hydroxide. Yield 1.6 g (77%). M.p. 145-147°C.

EXAMPLE 15

10 **Synthesis of 4-(5-carboxypentyl)amidocarbonyl-9-[6'-(4''-nitrobenzamido)-hexylamino]-aminoacridine.**

4-(5-Methoxycarbonylpentyl)amidocarbonyl-9-[6'-(4''-nitrobenzamido)-hexylamino]aminoacridine (503 mg, 0.82 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (30 mL), and 2 N sodium hydroxide (30 mL) was added. After stirring for 15 minutes, 2 N hydrochloric acid (35 mL) and water (50 mL) were added at 0°C. After stirring for 30 minutes, the solution was decanted, leaving an oily substance which was dissolved in boiling methanol (150 mL), filtered and concentrated to a third of the volume. To the methanol solution were added ether (125 mL) and 5-6 drops of HCl in ethanol. The solution was decanted after 1 h of stirring at 0°C. The oily substance was redissolved in methanol (25 mL) and precipitated with ether (150 mL). The title compound was isolated as yellow crystals after stirring overnight. Yield: 417 mg (80%). M.p. 173°C (decomp.).

EXAMPLE 16

(a) **Synthesis of 4-(5-pentafluorophenylloxycarbonylpentyl)-amidocarbonyl-9-[6'-(4''-nitrobenzamido)-hexylamino]-aminoacridine(Acr¹OPfp).**

25 The acid from Example 15 (300 mg, 0.48 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2 mL) and methylene chloride (8 mL) was added. Pentafluorophenol (97 mg, 0.53 mmol), transferred with 2x2 mL of the methylene chloride solution, was added. The resulting solution was cooled to 0°C after which DCC (124 mg, 0.6 mmol) was subsequently added. The ice bath was removed after 5 minutes and the mixture was stirred overnight. The precipitated DCU was removed by centrifugation and the centrifugate was evaporated to

30

dryness, *in vacuo*, first by a water aspirator and then by an oil pump. The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 mL), filtered, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was again dissolved in methylene chloride and petroleum ether (150 mL). A 1 mL aliquot of 5 M HCl in ether was added. The solvent was removed by decanting after
5 30 minutes of stirring at 0°C. The residual oily substance was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 mL). Petroleum ether (150 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight. The yellow precipitated crystalline material was isolated by filtration and washed with copious amounts of petroleum ether. Yield (after drying): 300 mg (78%). M.p. 97.5°C (decomp.) All samples showed satisfactory elemental analysis, ¹H- and ¹³C-
10 NMR and mass spectra.

(b) Experimental Procedure for the Synthesis of PNAs (Figure 3).

Materials: BOC-Lys (ClZ), benzhydrylamine-copoly(styrene-1%-divinylbenzene) resin (BHA resin), and p-methylbenzhydrylamine-copoly(styrene-1%-divinylbenzene) resin (MBHA resin) were purchased from Peninsula Laboratories. Other reagents and solvents
15 were: Biograde trifluoroacetic acid from Halocarbon Products; diisopropylethylamine (99%; was not further distilled) and N-acetylimidazole (98%) from Aldrich; H₂O was distilled twice; anhydrous HF from Union Carbide; synthesis grade N,N-dimethylformamide and analytical grade methylene chloride (was not further distilled) from Merck; HPLC grade acetonitrile from Lab-Scan; purum grade anisole, N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, and
20 puriss. grade 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol from Fluka.

General Methods and Remarks.

Except where otherwise stated, the following applies. The PNA compounds were synthesized by the stepwise solid phase approach (Merrifield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1963**, 85, 2149) employing conventional peptide chemistry utilizing the TFA-labile *tert*-
25 butyloxycarbonyl (BOC) group for "temporary" N-protection (Merrifield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1964**, 86, 304) and the more acid-stable benzyloxycarbonyl (Z) and 2-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl (ClZ) groups for "permanent" side chain protection. To obtain C-terminal amides, the PNAs were assembled onto the HF-labile BHA or MBHA resins (the MBHA resin has increased susceptibility to the final HF cleavage relative to the
30 unsubstituted BHA resin (Matsueda *et al.*, *Peptides*, **1981**, 2, 45). All reactions (except HF reactions) were carried out in manually operated standard solid phase reaction vessels fitted with a coarse glass frit (Merrifield *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, **1982**, 21, 5020). The quantitative

ninhydrin reaction (Kaiser test), originally developed by Sarin *et al.* (*Anal. Biochem.*, **1981**, 117, 147) for peptides containing "normal" amino acids, was successfully applied (see Table I - III) using the "normally" employed effective extinction coefficient $\epsilon = 15000 \text{ M}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-1}$ for all residues to determine the completeness of the individual couplings as well as to measure the number of growing peptide chains. The theoretical substitution S_{n-1} upon coupling of residue number n (assuming both complete deprotection and coupling as well as neither chain termination nor loss of PNA chains during the synthetic cycle) is calculated from the equation:

$$S_n = S_{n-1} \times (1 + (S_{n-1} \times \Delta \text{MW} \times 10^{-3} \text{ mmol/mol}))^{-1}$$

where ΔMW is the gain in molecular weight ($[\Delta \text{MW}] = \text{g/mol}$) and S_{n-1} is the theoretical substitution upon coupling of the preceding residue $n-1$ ($[S] = \text{mmol/g}$). The estimated value (%) on the extent of an individual coupling is calculated relative to the measured substitution (unless S was not determined) and include correction for the number of remaining free amino groups following the previous cycle. HF reactions were carried out in a Diaflon HF apparatus from Toho Kasei (Osaka, Japan). Vydac C_{18} (5 μm , 0.46x25 cm and 5 μm , 1x25 cm) reverse-phase columns, respectively were used for analytical and semi-preparative HPLC on an SP8000 instrument. Buffer A was 5 vol % acetonitrile in water containing 445 μl trifluoroacetic acid per liter, and buffer B was 60 vol % acetonitrile in water containing 390 μL trifluoroacetic acid per liter. The linear gradient was 0-100% of buffer B in 30 minutes, flow rates were 1.2 mL/minute (analytical) and 5 mL/minute (semi-preparative). The eluents were monitored at 215 nm (analytical) and 230 nm (semi-preparative). Molecular weights of the PNAs were determined by ^{252}Cf plasma desorption time-of-flight mass spectrometry from the mean of the most abundant isotopes.

EXAMPLE 17

25 Solid Phase Synthesis of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-NH}_2$ and Shorter Derivatives.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg] $_{15}$ -BHA Resin.

The synthesis was initiated on 100 mg of preswollen and neutralized BHA resin (determined by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction to contain 0.57 mmol NH_2/g) employing single couplings ("Synthetic Protocol 1") using 3.2 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OPfp in about 33% DMF/ CH_2Cl_2 . The individual coupling reactions were carried out by shaking for at least 12 h in a manually operated 6 mL standard solid phase reaction vessel and unreacted

amino groups were blocked by acetylation at selected stages of the synthesis. The progress of chain elongation was monitored at several stages by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction (see Table I). Portions of protected BOC-[Taeg]₅-BHA, BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-BHA, and BOC-[Taeg]₁₅-BHA resins were taken out after assembling 5, 10, and 15 residues, respectively.

Synthetic Step	Residue Coupled	Substitution After Deprotection (mmol/g)		Remaining Free Amino Groups After (μmol/g)		Estimated Extent of Cou-pling (%)
		Measd.	Theor.	Single Cou-pling	Acetylation	
"0"		0.57				
1	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.50	1.30		<99.7
2	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.44	1.43		<99.9
3	BOC-Taeg	0.29	0.39	3.33		99.3
4	BOC-Taeg	0.27	0.35	13.30		96.3
5	BOC-Taeg	0.26	0.32	8.33		>99.9
6	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.30	7.78		>99.9
7	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.28	13.81	7.22	<97.8
8	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.26	14.00		<99.9
9	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.24	30.33		93.2
10	BOC-Taeg	0.16	0.23	11.67	2.67	>99.9
11	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.21	4.58		>99.9
12	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.20	5.87		<99.4
13	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.19	1.67		>99.9
14	BOC-Taeg	ND	0.18	14.02		<93.1
15	BOC-Taeg	0.07	0.17	4.20	3.33	>99.9

ND = Not Determined

(b) **Synthesis of Acr¹-[Taeg]₁₅-BHA Resin.**

Following deprotection of the residual BOC-[Taeg]₁₅-BHA resin (estimated dry weight is about 30 mg, ~0.002 mmol growing chains), the H-[Taeg]₁₅-BHA resin was

reacted with about 50 equivalents (80 mg, 0.11 mmol) of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-OPfp}$ in 1 mL of about 66% $\text{DMF/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (*i.e.*, a 0.11 M solution of the pentafluorophenylester) in a 3 mL solid phase reaction vessel. As judged by a qualitative ninhydrin reaction, coupling of the acridine moiety was close to quantitative.

5 **(c) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of $\text{H-[Taeg]}_5\text{-NH}_2$.**

A portion of protected $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_5\text{-BHA}$ resin was treated with 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride to remove the N-terminal BOC group (which is a precursor of the potentially harmful *tert*-butyl cation) prior to the HF cleavage. Following neutralization and washing (performed in a way similar to those of steps 2-4 in "Synthetic Protocol 1"), and drying for 2 h in vacuum, the resulting 67.1 mg (dry weight) of $\text{H-[Taeg]}_5\text{-BHA}$ resin was cleaved with 5 mL of HF:anisole (9:1, v/v) stirring at 0°C for 60 minutes. After removal of HF, the residue was stirred with dry diethyl ether (4x15 mL, 15 minutes each) to remove anisole, filtered under gravity through a fritted glass funnel, and dried. The PNA was then extracted into a 60 mL (4x15 mL, stirring 15 minutes each) 10% aqueous acetic acid solution. Aliquots of this solution were analyzed by analytical reverse-phase HPLC to establish the purity of the crude PNA. The main peak at 13 minutes accounted for about 93% of the total absorbance. The remaining solution was frozen and lyophilized to afford about 22.9 mg of crude material. Finally, 19 mg of the crude product was purified from five batches, each containing 3.8 mg in 1 mL of H_2O . The main peak was collected by use of a semi-preparative reverse-phase column. Acetonitrile was removed on a speed vac and the residual solution was frozen (dry ice) and subsequently lyophilized to give 13.1 mg of >99% pure $\text{H-[Taeg]}_5\text{-NH}_2$. The PNA molecule readily dissolved in water and had the correct molecular weight based on mass spectral determination. For $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ the calculated m/z value was 1349.3 and the measured m/z value was 1347.8.

25 **(d) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-NH}_2$.**

A portion of protected $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-BHA}$ resin was treated as described in section (c) to yield 11 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 18.9 mg dry $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-BHA}$ resin. The main peak at 15.5 minutes accounted for about 53% of the total absorbance. About 1 mg of the crude product was purified repeatedly (for reasons described below) to give approximately 0.1 mg of at least 80% but presumably >99% pure $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-NH}_2$. A rather broad tail eluting after the target peak and accounting for about

20% of the total absorbance could not be removed (only slightly reduced) upon the repeated purification. Judged by the mass spectrum, which only confirms the presence of the correct molecular weight $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-NH}_2$, the tail phenomenon is ascribed to more or less well-defined aggregational/conformational states of the target molecule. Therefore, the crude product is likely to contain more than the above-mentioned 53% of the target molecule. $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-NH}_2$ is readily dissolved in water. For $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ the calculated m/z value was 2679.6 and the measured m/z value was 2681.5.

(e) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-NH}_2$.

A portion of protected $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-BHA}$ resin was treated as described in section (c) to yield 3.2 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 13.9 mg dry $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-BHA}$ resin. The main peak at 22.6 minutes was located in a broad bulge accounting for about 60% of the total absorbance (Fig. 12a). Again (see the preceding section), this bulge is ascribed to aggregational/conformational states of the target molecule $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-NH}_2$ since mass spectral analysis of the collected "bulge" did not significantly reveal the presence of other molecules. All of the crude product was purified collecting the "bulge" to give approximately 2.8 mg material. For $(\text{M}+\text{Na})^+$ the calculated m/z value was 4033.9 and the measured m/z value was 4032.9.

(f) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-NH}_2$.

A portion of protected $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-BHA}$ resin was treated as described in section (b) to yield 14.3 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 29.7 mg dry $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-BHA}$ resin. Taken together, the main peak at 23.7 minutes and a "dimer" (see below) at 29.2 minutes accounted for about 40% of the total absorbance (Fig. 12b). The crude product was purified repeatedly to give approximately 1 mg of presumably >99% pure $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-NH}_2$ "contaminated" with self-aggregated molecules eluting at 27.4 minutes, 29.2 minutes, and finally as a huge broad bulge eluting with 100% buffer B (Fig. 12c). This interpretation is in agreement with the observation that those peaks grow upon standing (for hours) in aqueous acetic acid solution, and finally precipitate out quantitatively. For $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ the calculated m/z value was 4593.6 and the measured m/z value was 4588.7.

(g) Synthetic Protocol 1.

(1) BOC-deprotection with $\text{TFA/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (1:1, v/v), 3 mL, 3x1 minute and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with $\text{DIEA/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$

- 44 -

(1: 19, v/v), 3 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin may be removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition of 3.2 equiv. (0.18 mmol, 100 mg) BocTaeg-OPfp dissolved in 1 mL of CH_2Cl_2 followed by addition of 5 0.5 mL of DMF (final concentration of pentafluorophenylester ~ 0.12 M); the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 12-24 h shaking at room temperature; (7) washing with DMF, 3 mL, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1: 19, v/v), 3 mL, 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin is taken out for a 10 rapid qualitative ninhydrin test and further 2-5 mg is dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling (after cycles 7, 10, and 15 unreacted amino groups were blocked by acetylation with N-acetylimidazol in methylene chloride).

EXAMPLE 18

Solid Phase Synthesis of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-Lys-NH}_2$ and Shorter Derivatives.

15 (a) Stepwise Assembly of $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ Resin.

The synthesis was initiated by a quantitative loading (standard DCC *in situ* coupling in neat CH_2Cl_2) of BOC-Lys(ClZ) onto 100 mg of preswollen and neutralized BHA resin (0.57 mmol NH_2/g). Further extension of the protected PNA chain employed single couplings ("Synthetic Protocol 2") for cycles 1 to 5 and cycles 10 to 15 using 3.2 20 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OPfp in about 33% DMF/ CH_2Cl_2 . Cycles 5 to 10 employed an additional DCC (*i.e.*, *in situ*) coupling of the free acid BOC-Taeg-OH in about 33% DMF/ CH_2Cl_2 . All coupling reactions were carried out by shaking for at least 12 h in a manually operated 6 mL standard solid phase reaction vessel. Unreacted amino groups were blocked by acetylation at the same stages of the synthesis as was done in Example 17. 25 Portions of protected $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_5\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ and $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ resins were removed after assembling 5 and 10 PNA residues, respectively. As judged by the analytical HPLC chromatogram of the crude cleavage product from the $\text{BOC-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ resin (see section (e)), an additional "free acid" coupling of PNA residues 5 to 10 gave no significant improvement of the synthetic yield as compared to the 30 throughout single-coupled residues in Example 17.

(b) Synthesis of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ Resin.

Following deprotection of a portion of BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin (estimated dry weight is about 90 mg, ~ 0.01 mmol growing chains), the H-[Taeg]₁₅-BHA resin was reacted with about 20 equivalents (141 mg, 0.19 mmol) of Acr¹-OPfp in 1 mL of about 66% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ in a 3 mL solid phase reaction vessel. As judged by a qualitative ninhydrin reaction, coupling of the acridine moiety was close to quantitative.

(c) Synthesis of Acr¹-[Taeg]₁₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA Resin.

Following deprotection of the residual BOC-[Taeg]₁₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin (estimated dry weight about 70 mg, ~ 0.005 mmol growing chains), the H-[Taeg]₁₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was reacted with about 25 equivalents (91 mg, 0.12 mmol) of Acr¹-OPfp in 1 mL of about 66% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ in a 3 mL solid phase reaction vessel. As judged by a qualitative ninhydrin reaction, coupling of the acridine moiety was close to quantitative.

(d) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₅-Lys-NH₂.

A portion of protected BOC-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield 8.9 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 19 mg dry H-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin. The main peak at 12.2 minutes (eluted at 14.2 minutes if injected from an aqueous solution instead of the 10% aqueous acetic acid solution) accounted for about 90% of the total absorbance. About 2.2 mg of the crude product was purified to give approximately 1.5 mg of 99% pure H-[Taeg]₅-Lys-NH₂.

(e) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

A portion of protected BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield 1.7 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 7 mg dry H-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin. The main peak at 15.1 minutes (eluted at 17 minutes if injected from an aqueous solution instead of the 10% aqueous acetic acid solution) accounted for about 50% of the total absorbance. About 1.2 mg of the crude product was purified to give approximately 0.2 mg of >95% pure H-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂ (Figure 4). For (M+H)⁺ the calculated m/z value was 2807.8 and the measured m/z value was 2808.2.

(f) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of Acr¹-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

Protected Acr¹-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin (99.1 mg, dry weight) was cleaved as described in Example 17(c) to yield 42.2 mg of crude material. The main peak at 25.3 minutes (eluted at 23.5 minutes if injected from an aqueous solution instead of the 10% aqueous acetic acid solution) accounted for about 45% of the total absorbance. An 8.87

mg portion of the crude product was purified to give approximately 5.3 mg of >97% pure $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-Lys-NH}_2$. For $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ the calculated m/z value was 2850.8 and the measured m/z value was 2849.8.

(g) Cleavage and Purification of $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-Lys-NH}_2$.

5 A 78.7 mg portion of protected $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-Lys(ClZ)-BHA}$ resin (dry weight) was cleaved as described in Example 18 to yield 34.8 mg of crude material. The main peak at 23.5 minutes (about the same elution time if injected from an aqueous solution instead of the 10% aqueous acetic acid solution) and a "dimer" at 28.2 minutes accounted for about 35% of the total absorbance. About 4.5 mg of the crude product was purified
10 to give approximately 1.6 mg of presumably >95% pure $\text{Acr}^1\text{-[Taeg]}_{15}\text{-Lys-NH}_2$. This compound could not be free of the "dimer" peak, which grew upon standing in aqueous acetic acid solution.

(h) Synthetic Protocol 2.

(1) BOC-deprotection with $\text{TFA/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (1:1, v/v), 3 mL, 3x1 minute and 1x30
15 minutes; (2) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with $\text{DIEA/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (1: 19, v/v), 3 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin can be removed and dried thoroughly for a qualitative ninhydrin analysis; (6) for cycles 1 to 5 and cycles 10 to 15 the coupling reaction was carried out by addition of 3.2 equiv. (0.18 mmol, 100 mg) of BOC-Taeg-OPfp
20 dissolved in 1 mL of CH_2Cl_2 , followed by addition of 0.5 mL of DMF (final concentration of pentafluorophenylester ~ 0.12 M). The coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 12-24 h with shaking; cycles 5 to 10 employed an additional 0.12 M DCC coupling of 0.12 M BOC-Taeg-OH in 1.5 mL of $\text{DMF/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (1:2, v/v); (7) washing with DMF, 3 mL, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization
25 with $\text{DIEA/CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ (1: 19, v/v), 3 mL, 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 3 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin is removed for a qualitative ninhydrin test (after cycles 7, 10, and 15), and unreacted amino groups were blocked by acetylation with N-acetylimidazole in methylene chloride).

EXAMPLE 19

30 Improved Solid Phase Synthesis of $\text{H-[Taeg]}_{10}\text{-Lys-NH}_2$.

The protected PNA was assembled onto an MBHA resin, using approximately half

the loading of the BHA resin used in the previous examples. Furthermore, all cycles except one was followed by acetylation of uncoupled amino groups. The following describes the synthesis in detail:

(a) Preparation of BOC-Lys(ClZ)-NH-CH(*p*-CH₃-C₆H₄)-C₆H₄ Resin (MBHA Resin) With an Initial Substitution of 0.3 mmol/g.

The desired substitution of BOC-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was 0.25 - 0.30 mmol/g. In order to get this value, 1.5 mmol of BOC-Lys(ClZ) was coupled to 5 g of neutralized and preswollen MBHA resin (determined by quantitative ninhydrin reaction to contain 0.64 mmol NH₂/g) using a single *in situ* coupling (1.5 mmol of DCC) in 60 mL of CH₂Cl₂. The reaction was carried out by shaking for 3 h in a manually operated, 225 mL, standard, solid phase reaction vessel. Unreacted amino groups were then blocked by acetylation with a mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 18 h. A quantitative ninhydrin reaction on the neutralized resin showed that only 0.00093 mmol/g free amine remained (see Table I), *i.e.* 0.15% of the original amino groups. The degree of substitution was estimated by deprotection and ninhydrin analysis, and was found to be 0.32 mmol/g for the neutralized H-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. This compares well with the maximum value of 0.28 mmol/g for a quantitative coupling of 0.30 mmol BOC-Lys(ClZ)/g resin (see Table II).

(b) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₃-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

The entire batch of H-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin prepared in section (a) was used directly (in the same reaction vessel) to assemble BOC-[Taeg]₃-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin by single couplings ("Synthetic Protocol 3") utilizing 2.5 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OPfp in neat CH₂Cl₂. The quantitative ninhydrin reaction was applied throughout the synthesis (see Table II).

(c) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 4.5 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₃-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin (~0.36 mmol growing chains, taken out of totally ~ 19 g wet resin prepared in section (b)) was placed in a 55 mL solid phase peptide synthesis (SPPS) reaction vessel. BOC-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by single couplings ("Synthetic Protocol 4") utilizing 2.5 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OPfp in about 30% DMF/CH₂Cl₂. The progress of the synthesis was monitored at all stages by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction (see Table II).

(d) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

- 48 -

About 1 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin (~0.09 mmol growing chains, taken out of totally ~4 g wet resin prepared in section (c)) was placed in a 20 mL SPPS reaction vessel. BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by the single-coupling protocol employed in the preceding section utilizing 2.5 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OPfp in about 30% DMF/CH₂Cl₂. The reaction volume was 3 mL (vigorous shaking). The synthesis was monitored by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction (see Table II).

Synthetic Step	Residue Coupled	Substitution After Deprotection (mmol/g)		Remaining Free Amino Groups After (μmol/g)		Estimated Extent of Coupling (%)
		Measd.	Theor.	Single Coupling	Acetyltn.	
"0"	BOC-Lys(ClZ)	0.32	0.28		0.93	
1	BOC-Taeg	0.23	0.26	0.97	0.54	>99.9
2	BOC-Taeg	0.21	0.24	0.92	0.46	99.8
3	BOC-Taeg	0.19	0.23	1.00	0.57	99.7
4	BOC-Taeg	0.18	0.21	1.85		99.3
5	BOC-Taeg	0.17	0.20	2.01	0.19	99.9
6	BOC-Taeg	0.15	0.19	1.69	0.10	99.0
7	BOC-Taeg	0.11	0.18	1.11	0.66	99.1
8	BOC-Taeg	0.12	0.17	1.82	0.44	99.0
9	BOC-Taeg	0.10	0.17	5.63	0.56	94.8
10	BOC-Taeg	0.11	0.16	1.54	0.67	99.1

(e) Synthesis of Ac-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

Following deprotection of a portion of Boc-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin (estimated dry weight is about 45 mg), the resin was next acetylated quantitatively with a 2 mL mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 2 h in a 3 mL solid phase reaction vessel.

(f) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

A portion of protected Boc-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 24 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 76 mg dry

H-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin. The main peak at 15.2 minutes (which includes impurities such as deletion peptides and various byproducts) accounted for about 78% of the total absorbance. The main peak also accounted for about 88% of the "main peak plus deletion peaks" absorbance, which is in good agreement with the overall estimated coupling yield of 90.1% obtained by summarizing the individual coupling yields in Table II. A 7.2 mg portion of the crude product was purified from two batches by use of a semi-preparative reverse-phase column, (collecting the main peak in a beaker cooled with dry ice/2-propanol). Each contained 3.6 mg in 1 mL of H₂O. The frozen solution was lyophilized directly (without prior removal of acetonitrile on a speed vac) to give 4.2 mg of 82% pure H-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

(g) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of Ac-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂

A 400.0 mg portion of protected Ac-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin (dry weight) was cleaved as described in Example 17(c), except for the TFA treatment to yield 11.9 mg of crude material. The main peak at 15.8 minutes accounted for about 75% of the total absorbance. A 4.8 mg portion of the crude product was purified to give approximately 3.5 mg of >95% pure Ac-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂. For (M+H)⁺ the calculated m/z value = 2849.8 and the measured m/z value = 2848.8.

(h) Synthetic Protocol 3.

(1) Boc-deprotection with TFA/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1, v/v), 100 mL, 3x1 minute and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 100 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 100 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 100 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin is removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition of 2.5 equiv. (3.75 mmol; 2.064 g) BocTaeg-OPfp dissolved in 35 mL CH₂Cl₂ (final concentration of pentafluorophenylester ~0.1 M); the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 20-24 h with shaking; (7) washing with DMF, 100 mL, 1x2 minutes (to remove precipitate of BOC-Taeg-OH); (8) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 100 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 100 mL, 2x2 minute; (10) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 100 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin was removed for a rapid qualitative ninhydrin test and a further 2-5 mg is dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling; (12) blocking of unreacted amino groups by acetylation with a 100 mL mixture of acetic anhydride / pyridine / CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2,

- 50 -

v/v/v) for 2 h; (13) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 100 mL, 6x1 minute; (14) 2 x 2-5 mg samples of protected PNA-resin were removed, neutralized with DIEA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1: 19, v/v) and washed with CH_2Cl_2 for qualitative and quantitative ninhydrin analyses.

(i) Synthetic Protocol 4.

- 5 (1) Boc-deprotection with TFA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1:1, v/v), 25 mL, 3x1 min and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 25 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with DIEA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1: 19, v/v), 25 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 25 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition
10 of 2.5 equiv. (0.92 mmol; 0.506 g) BocTaeg-OPfp dissolved in 6 mL CH_2Cl_2 followed by addition of 3 mL DMF (final concentration of pentafluorophenylester ~0.1 M); the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 20-24 hrs with shaking; (7) washing with DMF, 25 mL, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 25 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1: 19, v/v), 25 mL, 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with
15 CH_2Cl_2 , 25 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin was removed for a rapid qualitative ninhydrin test and a further 2-5 mg is dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling; (12) blocking of unreacted amino groups by acetylation with a 25 mL mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/ CH_2Cl_2 (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 2 h (except after the first cycle); (13) washing with CH_2Cl_2 , 25 mL, 6x1 minute;
20 (14) 2x2-5 mg samples of protected PNA-resin are taken out, neutralized with DIEA/ CH_2Cl_2 (1: 19, v/v) and washed with CH_2Cl_2 for qualitative and quantitative ninhydrin analyses.

EXAMPLE 20

Synthesis of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-N'-(BOC-aminoethyl)glycine.

- 25 Aminoethyl glycine (52.86 g, 0.447 mol) was dissolved in water (900 mL) and dioxane (900 mL) was added. The pH was adjusted to 11.2 with 2N NaOH. While the pH was kept at 11.2, *tert*-butyl-*p*-nitrophenyl carbonate (128.4 g, 0.537 mol) was dissolved in dioxane (720 mL) and added dropwise over the course of 2 hours. The pH was kept at 11.2 for at least three more hours and then allowed to stand overnight, with stirring. The
30 yellow solution was cooled to 0°C and the pH was adjusted to 3.5 with 2 N HCl. The mixture was washed with chloroform (4x100 mL), and the pH of the aqueous phase was

- 51 -

readjusted to 9.5 with 2 N NaOH at 0°C. Benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (73.5 mL, 0.515 mol) was added over half an hour, while the pH was kept at 9.5 with 2 N NaOH. The pH was adjusted frequently over the next 4 hours, and the solution was allowed to stand overnight, with stirring. On the following day the solution was washed with ether (3x600 mL) and the pH of the solution was afterwards adjusted to 1.5 with 2 N HCl at 0°C. The title compound was isolated by extraction with ethyl acetate (5x1000 mL). The ethyl acetate solution was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. This afforded 138 g of the product, which was dissolved in ether (300 mL) and precipitated by the addition of petroleum ether (1800 mL). Yield 124.7 g (79%). M.p. 64.5-85 °C. Anal. for C₁₇H₂₄N₂O₆ found(calc.) C: 58.40(57.94); H: 7.02(6.86); N: 7.94(7.95). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) 7.33 & 7.32 (5H, Ph); 5.15 & 5.12 (2H, PhCH₂); 4.03 & 4.01 (2H, NCH₂CO₂H); 3.46 (b, 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂); 3.28 (b, 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂); 1.43 & 1.40 (9H, *t*-Bu). HPLC (260 nm) 20.71 min. (80.2%) and 21.57 min. (19.8%). The UV-spectra (200 nm - 300 nm) are identical, indicating that the minor peak consists of Bis-Z-AEG.

15 EXAMPLE 21

Synthesis of N'-BOC-aminoethylglycine ethyl ester.

N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-N'-(BOC-aminoethyl)glycine (60 g, 0.170 mol) and N,N-dimethyl-4-aminopyridine (6 g) were dissolved in absolute ethanol (500 mL), and cooled to 0°C before the addition of DCC (42.2 g, 0.204 mol). The ice bath was removed after 5 minutes and stirring was continued for 2 more hours. The precipitated DCU (32.5 g, dried) was removed by filtration and washed with ether (3x100 mL). The combined filtrate was washed successively with diluted potassium hydrogen sulfate (2x400 mL), diluted sodium hydrogencarbonate (2x400 mL) and saturated sodium chloride (1x400 mL). The organic phase was filtered, then dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, which yielded 66.1 g of an oily substance which contained some DCU.

The oil was dissolved in absolute ethanol (600 mL) and was added 10% palladium on carbon (6.6 g) was added. The solution was hydrogenated at atmospheric pressure, where the reservoir was filled with 2 N sodium hydroxide. After 4 hours, 3.3 L was consumed out of the theoretical 4.2 L. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, affording 39.5 g (94%) of an oily substance. A 13 g portion of the oily substance was purified by silica gel (SiO₂, 600 g) chromatography.

- 52 -

After elution with 300 mL of 20% petroleum ether in methylene chloride, the title compound was eluted with 1700 mL of 5% methanol in methylene chloride. The solvent was removed from the fractions with satisfactory purity, *in vacuo* and the yield was 8.49 g. Alternatively 10 g of the crude material was purified by Kugel Rohr distillation. ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, CD₃OD); 4.77 (b. s, NH); 4.18 (q, 2H, MeCH₂-); 3.38 (s, 2H, NCH₂CO₂Et); 3.16 (t, 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂); 2.68 (t, 2H, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂); 1.43 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu) and 1.26 (t, 3H, CH₃) ¹³C-NMR 171.4 (COEt); 156.6 (CO); 78.3 ((CH₂)₂); 59.9 (CH₂); 49.0 (CH₂); 48.1 (CH₂); 39.0 (CH₂); 26.9 (CH₂) and 12.6 (CH₃).

EXAMPLE 22

10 Synthesis of N'-BOC-aminoethylglycine methyl ester.

The above procedure was used, with methanol being substituted for ethanol. The final product was purified by column purification.

EXAMPLE 23

Synthesis of 1-(BOC-aeg)thymine ethyl ester.

15 N'-BOC-aminoethylglycine ethyl ester (13.5 g, 54.8 mmol), DhbtOH (9.84 g, 60.3 mmol) and 1-carboxymethyl thymine (11.1 g, 60.3 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (210 mL). Methylene chloride (210 mL) was added. The solution was cooled to 0°C in an ethanol/ice bath and DCC (13.6 g, 65.8 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 1 hour and stirring was continued for another 2 hours at ambient temperature. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed twice with methylene chloride
20 (2x75 mL). To the combined filtrate was added more methylene chloride (650 mL). The solution was washed successively with diluted sodium hydrogen carbonate (3x500 mL), diluted potassium hydrogen sulfate (2x500 mL), and saturated sodium chloride (1x500 mL). Some of the precipitate was removed from the organic phase by filtration. The organic
25 phase was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The oily residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (150 mL), filtered, and the title compound was precipitated by the addition of petroleum ether (350 mL) at 0°C. The methylene chloride/petroleum ether procedure was repeated once. This afforded 16 g (71%) of a material which was more than 99% pure by HPLC.

EXAMPLE 24**Synthesis of 1-(BOC-aeg)thymine.**

The material from above was suspended in THF (194 mL, gives a 0.2 M solution), and 1 M aqueous lithium hydroxide (116 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at ambient temperature and then filtered to remove residual DCU. Water (40 mL) was added to the solution which was then washed with methylene chloride (300 mL). Additional water (30 mL) was added, and the alkaline solution was washed once more with methylene chloride (150 mL). The aqueous solution was cooled to 0°C and the pH was adjusted to 2 by the dropwise addition of 1 N HCl (approx. 110 mL). The title compound was extracted with ethyl acetate (9x200 mL), the combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate and were evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was evaporated once from methanol, which after drying overnight afforded a colorless glassy solid. Yield: 9.57 g (64 %). HPLC > 98% R_T =14.8 minutes. Anal. for $C_{16}H_{24}N_4O_7 \cdot 0.25 H_2O$ Found (calc.) C: 49.29(49.42); H: 6.52(6.35); N: 14.11(14.41). Due to the limited rotation around the secondary amide, several of the signals were doubled in the ratio 2:1 (indicated in the list by mj. for major and mi. for minor). 1H -NMR (250 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ : 12.75 (bs, 1H, CO_2H); 11.28 (s, 1H, mj, imide NH); 11.26 (s, 1H, mi, imide NH); 7.30 (s, 1H, mj, T H-6); 7.26 (s, 1H, mi, T H-6); 6.92 (bt, 1H, mj, BOC-NH); 6.73 (bt, 1H, mi, BOC-NH); 4.64 (s, 2H, mj, CH_2CON); 4.46 (s, 2H, mj, CH_2CON); 4.19 (s, 2H, mi, CH_2CO_2H); 3.97 (s, 2H, mj, CH_2CO_2H); 3.63-3.01 (unresolved m, includes water, CH_2CH_2); 1.75 (s, 3H, CH_3) and 1.38 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu).

EXAMPLE 25**Synthesis of N⁴-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(BOC-aeg)cytosine.**

N⁴-BOC-aminoethyl glycine ethyl ester (5 g, 20.3 mmol), DhbtOH (3.64 g, 22.3 mmol) and N⁴-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-carboxymethyl cytosine (6.77 g, 22.3 mmol) were suspended in DMF (100 mL). Methylene chloride (100 mL) was added. The solution was cooled to 0°C and DCC (5.03 g, 24.4 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 2 h and stirring was continued for another hour at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture then was evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was suspended in ether (100 mL) and stirred vigorously for 30 minutes. The solid material was isolated by filtration and the ether wash procedure was repeated twice. The material was then stirred vigorously for

15 minutes with dilute sodium hydrogencarbonate (aprox. 4% solution, 100 mL), filtered and washed with water. This procedure was then repeated once, which after drying left 17 g of yellowish solid material. The solid was then refluxed with dioxane (200 mL) and filtered while hot. After cooling, water (200 mL) was added. The precipitated material
5 was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried. According to HPLC (observing at 260 nm) this material has a purity higher than 99%, besides the DCU. The ester was then suspended in THF (100 ml), cooled to 0°C, and 1 N LiOH (61 mL) was added. After stirring for 15 minutes, the mixture was filtered and the filtrate was washed with methylene chloride (2x150 mL). The alkaline solution then was cooled to 0°C and the pH was
10 adjusted to 2.0 with 1 N HCl. The title compound was isolated by filtration and was washed once with water, leaving 11.3 g of a white powder after drying. The material was suspended in methylene chloride (300 mL) and petroleum ether (300 mL) was added. Filtration and wash afforded 7.1 g (69%) after drying. HPLC showed a purity of 99% R_T = 19.5 minutes, and a minor impurity at 12.6 minutes (approx. 1%) most likely the Z-
15 deprotected monomer. Anal. for $C_{23}H_{29}N_5O_8$ found(calc.) C: 54.16(54.87); H: 5.76(5.81) and N: 13.65(13.91). 1H -NMR (250 MHz, DMSO- d_6). 10.78 (bs, 1H, CO $\underline{H}$); 7.88 (2 overlapping doublets, 1H, Cyt H-5); 7.41-7.32 (m, 5H, Ph); 7.01 (2 overlapping doublets, 1H, Cyt H-6); 6.94 & 6.78 (unresolved triplets, 1H, BOC-N $\underline{H}$); 5.19 (s, 2H, PhCH $\underline{2}$); 4.81 & 4.62 (s, 2H, CH $\underline{2}$ CON); 4.17 & 3.98 (s, 2H, CH $\underline{2}$ CO $_2$ H); 3.42-3.03 (m, includes water,
20 CH $\underline{2}$ CH $\underline{2}$) and 1.38 & 1.37 (s, 9H, t -Bu). ^{13}C -NMR. 150.88; 128.52; 128.18; 127.96; 93.90; 66.53; 49.58 and 28.22. IR: Frequency in cm^{-1} (intensity). 3423 (26.4), 3035 (53.2), 2978(41.4), 1736(17.3), 1658(3.8), 1563(23.0), 1501(6.8) and 1456 (26.4).

EXAMPLE 26

Synthesis of 9-carboxymethyladenine ethyl ester.

25 Adenine (10 g, 74 mmol) and potassium carbonate (10.29 g, 74 mmol) were suspended in DMF and ethyl bromoacetate (8.24 mL, 74 mmol) was added. The suspension was stirred for 2.5 h under nitrogen at room temperature and then filtered. The solid residue was washed three times with DMF (10 mL). The combined filtrate was evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Water (200 mL) was added to the yellowish-orange solid
30 material and the pH adjusted to 6 with 4 N HCl. After stirring at 0°C for 10 minutes, the solid was filtered off, washed with water, and recrystallized from 96% ethanol (150 mL).

The title compound was isolated by filtration and washed thoroughly with ether. Yield: 3.4 g (20%). M.p. 215.5-220°C. Anal. for $C_9H_{11}N_5O_2$ found(calc.): C: 48.86(48.65); H: 5.01(4.91); N: 31.66(31.42). 1H -NMR (250 MHz; DMSO- d_6): 7.25 (bs, 2H, NH_2), 5.06 (s, 2H, NCH_2), 4.17 (q, 2H, $J=7.11$ Hz, OCH_2) and 1.21 (t, 3H, $J=7.13$ Hz, NCH_3). ^{13}C -NMR. 5 152.70, 141.30, 61.41, 43.97 and 14.07. FAB-MS. 222 (MH $^+$). IR: Frequency in cm^{-1} (intensity). 3855 (54.3), 3274(10.4), 3246(14.0), 3117(5.3), 2989(22.3), 2940(33.9), 2876(43.4), 2753(49.0), 2346(56.1), 2106(57.1), 1899(55.7), 1762(14.2), 1742(14.2), 1742(1.0), 1671(1.8), 1644(10.9), 1606(0.6), 1582(7.1), 1522(43.8), 1477(7.2), 1445(35.8) and 1422(8.6). The position of alkylation was verified by X-ray crystallography on 10 crystals, which were obtained by recrystallization from 96% ethanol.

Alternatively, 9-carboxymethyladenine ethyl ester can be prepared by the following procedure. To a suspension of adenine (50 g, 0.37 mol) in DMF (1100 mL) in 2 L three-necked flask equipped with a nitrogen inlet, a mechanical stirrer and a dropping funnel, was added 16.4 g (0.407 mol) of hexane-washed sodium hydride-mineral oil dispersion. The 15 mixture was stirred vigorously for 2 hours, after which ethyl bromacetate (75 mL, 0.67 mol) was added dropwise over the course of 3 hours. The mixture was stirred for one additional hour, after which tlc indicated complete conversion of adenine. The mixture was evaporated to dryness at 1 mm Hg and water (500 mL) was added to the oily residue which caused crystallization of the title compound. The solid was recrystallised from 96% ethanol 20 (600 mL). Yield (after drying): 53.7 g (65.6%). HPLC (215 nm) purity > 99.5%.

EXAMPLE 27

Synthesis of N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-9-carboxymethyladenine ethyl ester.

9-Carboxymethyladenine ethyl ester (3.4 g, 15.4 mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (50 mL) by gentle heating, cooled to 20°C, and added to a solution of N-ethyl-ben- 25 zyloxycarbonylimidazole tetrafluoroborate (62 mmol) in methylene chloride (50 mL) over a period of 15 minutes in an ice bath. Some precipitation was observed. The ice bath was removed and the solution was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was treated with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate (100 mL). After stirring for 10 minutes, the phases were separated and the organic phase was washed successively with one volume of water, 30 dilute potassium hydrogen sulfate (twice), and with saturated sodium chloride. The solution was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, which afforded 11

g of an oily material. The material was dissolved in methylene chloride (25 mL), cooled to 0°C, and precipitated with petroleum ether (50 mL). This procedure was repeated once to give 3.45 g (63%) of the title compound. M.p. 132-35°C. Analysis for C₁₇H₁₇N₅O₄ found (calc.): C: 56.95(57.46); H: 4.71(4.82); N: 19.35(19.71). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz; CDCl₃): 8.77 (s, 1H, H-2 or H-8); 7.99 (s, 1H, H-2 or H-8); 7.45-7.26 (m, 5H, Ph); 5.31 (s, 2H, N-CH₂); 4.96 (s, 2H, Ph-CH₂); 4.27 (q, 2H, J=7.15 Hz, CH₂CH₃) and 1.30 (t, 3H, J=7.15 Hz, CH₂CH₃). ¹³C-NMR: 153.09; 143.11; 128.66; 67.84; 62.51; 44.24 and 14.09. FAB-MS: 356 (MH⁺) and 312 (MH⁺-CO₂). IR: frequency in cm⁻¹ (intensity). 3423 (52.1); 3182 (52.8); 3115(52.1); 3031(47.9); 2981(38.6); 1747(1.1); 1617(4.8); 1587(8.4); 1552(25.2); 1511(45.2); 1492(37.9); 1465(14.0) and 1413(37.3).

EXAMPLE 28

Synthesis of N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-9-carboxymethyladenine.

N⁶-Benzyloxycarbonyl-9-carboxymethyladenine ethyl ester (3.2 g, 9.01 mmol) was mixed with methanol (50 mL) cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydroxide solution (2 N, 50 mL) was added, whereby the material quickly dissolved. After 30 minutes at 0°C, the alkaline solution was washed with methylene chloride (2x50 mL). The pH of the aqueous solution was adjusted to 1 with 4 N HCl at 0°C, whereby the title compound precipitated. The yield after filtration, washing with water, and drying was 3.08 g (104%). The product contained salt, and the elemental analysis reflected that. Anal. for C₁₅H₁₃N₅O₄ found(calc.): C: 46.32(55.05); H: 4.24(4.00); N: 18.10(21.40) and C/N: 2.57(2.56). ¹H-NMR(250 MHz; DMSO-d₆): 8.70 (s, 2H, H-2 and H-8); 7.50-7.35 (m, 5H, Ph); 5.27 (s, 2H, N-CH₂); and 5.15 (s, 2H, Ph-CH₂). ¹³C-NMR. 168.77, 152.54, 151.36, 148.75, 145.13, 128.51, 128.17, 127.98, 66.76 and 44.67. IR (KBr) 3484(18.3); 3109(15.9); 3087(15.0); 2966(17.1); 2927(19.9); 2383(53.8); 1960(62.7); 1739(2.5); 1688(5.2); 1655(0.9); 1594(11.7); 1560(12.3); 1530(26.3); 1499(30.5); 1475(10.4); 1455(14.0); 1429(24.5) and 1411(23.6). FAB-MS: 328 (MH⁺) and 284 (MH⁺-CO₂). HPLC (215 nm, 260 nm) in system 1: 15.18 min, minor impurities all less than 2%.

EXAMPLE 29

Synthesis of N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(BOC-aeg)adenine ethyl ester.

N⁶-BOC-aminoethylglycine ethyl ester (2 g, 8.12 mmol), DhbtOH (1.46 g, 8.93

- 57 -

mmol) and N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-9-carboxymethyl adenine (2.92 g, 8.93 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (15 mL). Methylene chloride (15 mL) then was added. The solution was cooled to 0°C in an ethanol/ice bath. DCC (2.01 g, 9.74 mmol) was added. The ice bath was removed after 2.5 h and stirring was continued for another 1.5 hour at ambient temperature. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed once with DMF (15 mL), and twice with methylene chloride (2x15 mL). To the combined filtrate was added more methylene chloride (100 mL). The solution was washed successively with dilute sodium hydrogen carbonate (2x100 mL), dilute potassium hydrogen sulfate (2x100 mL), and saturated sodium chloride (1x100 mL). The organic phase was evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*, which afforded 3.28 g (73%) of a yellowish oily substance. HPLC of the raw product showed a purity of only 66% with several impurities, both more and less polar than the main peak. The oil was dissolved in absolute ethanol (50 mL) and activated carbon was added. After stirring for 5 minutes, the solution was filtered. The filtrate was mixed with water (30 mL) and was allowed to stir overnight. The next day, the white precipitate was removed by filtration, washed with water, and dried, affording 1.16 g (26%) of a material with a purity higher than 98% by HPLC. Addition of water to the mother liquor afforded another 0.53 g of the product with a purity of approx. 95%. Anal. for C₂₆H₃₃N₇O₇·H₂O found(calc.) C: 55.01(54.44; H: 6.85(6.15) and N: 16.47(17.09). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, CDCl₃) 8.74 (s, 1H, Ade H-2); 8.18 (b. s, 1H, ZNH); 8.10 & 8.04 (s, 1H, H-8); 7.46-7.34 (m, 5H, Ph); 5.63 (unres. t, 1H, BOC-NH); 5.30 (s, 2H, PhCH₂); 5.16 & 5.00 (s, 2H, CH₂CON); 4.29 & 4.06 (s, 2H, CH₂CO₂H); 4.20 (q, 2H, OCH₂CH₃); 3.67-3.29 (m, 4H, CH₂CH₂); 1.42 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu) and 1.27 (t, 3H, OCH₂CH₃). The spectrum shows traces of ethanol and DCU.

EXAMPLE 30

25 Synthesis of N⁶-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(BOC-aeg)adenine.

N⁶-Benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(BOC-aeg)adenine ethyl ester (1.48 g, 2.66 mmol) was suspended in THF (13 mL) and the mixture was cooled to 0°C. Lithium hydroxide (8 mL, 1 N) was added. After 15 minutes of stirring, the reaction mixture was filtered, extra water (25 mL) was added, and the solution was washed with methylene chloride (2x25 mL). The pH of the aqueous solution was adjusted to 2 with 1 N HCl. The precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed with water, and dried, affording 0.82 g (58%) of the product. The

product was additionally precipitated twice with methylene chloride/petroleum ether. Yield (after drying): 0.77 g (55%). M.p. 119°C (decomp.). Anal. for $C_{24}H_{29}N_7O_7 \cdot H_2O$ found(calc.) C: 53.32(52.84); H: 5.71(5.73); N: 17.68(17.97). FAB-MS. 528.5 (MH⁺). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, DMSO-d₆). 12.75 (very b, 1H, CO₂H); 10.65 (b. s, 1H, ZNH); 8.59 (d, 1H, J= 2.14 Hz, Ade H-2); 8.31 (s, 1H, Ade H-8); 7.49-7.31 (m, 5H, Ph); 7.03 & 6.75 (unresol. t, 1H, BOC-NH); 5.33 & 5.16 (s, 2H, CH₂CON); 5.22 (s, 2H, PhCH₂); 4.34-3.99 (s, 2H, CH₂CO₂H); 3.54-3.03 (m's, includes water, CH₂CH₂) and 1.39 & 1.37 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu). ¹³C-NMR. 170.4; 166.6; 152.3; 151.5; 149.5; 145.2; 128.5; 128.0; 127.9; 66.32; 47.63; 47.03; 43.87 and 28.24.

10 EXAMPLE 31

Synthesis of 2-amino-6-chloro-9-carboxymethylpurine.

To a suspension of 2-amino-6-chloropurine (5.02 g, 29.6 mmol) and potassium carbonate (12.91 g, 93.5 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) was added bromoacetic acid (4.7 g, 22.8 mmol). The mixture was stirred vigorously for 20 h under nitrogen. Water (150 mL) was added and the solution was filtered through celite to give a clear yellow solution. The solution was acidified to a pH of 3 with 4 N hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was filtered and dried, *in vacuo*, over sicapent. Yield: 3.02 g (44.8%). ¹H-NMR(DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.88 ppm (s, 2H); 6.95 (s, 2H); 8.10 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 32

20 Synthesis of 2-amino-6-benzyloxy-9-carboxymethylpurine.

Sodium (2 g 87 mmol) was dissolved in benzyl alcohol (20 mL) and heated to 130°C for 2 h. After cooling to 0°C, a solution of 2-amino-6-chloro-9-carboxymethylpurine (4.05 g, 18 mmol) in DMF (85 mL) was slowly added, and the resulting suspension stirred overnight at 20°C. Sodium hydroxide solution (1 N, 100 mL) was added and the clear solution was washed with ethyl acetate (3x100 mL). The water phase was then acidified to a pH of 3 with 4 N hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was taken up in ethyl acetate (200 mL), and the water phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x100 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with saturated sodium chloride solution (2x75 mL), dried with anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was recrystallized from ethanol (300 mL). Yield, after drying *in*

- 59 -

vacuo, over sicapent: 2.76 g (52%). M.p. 159-65°C. Anal. (calc.; found): C(56.18; 55.97), H(4.38; 4.32), N(23.4; 23.10). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.82 (s, 2H); 5.51 (s, 2H); 6.45 (s, 2H); 7.45 (m, 5H); 7.82 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 33

5 **Synthesis of N-([2-amino-6-benzyloxy-purine-9-yl]-acetyl)-N-(2-BOC-aminoethyl)glycine [BOC-Gaeg-OH monomer].**

2-Amino-6-benzyloxy-9-carboxymethyl-purine (0.5 g, 1.67 mmol), methyl-N(2-[*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino]ethyl)-glycinate (0.65 g, 2.8 mmol), diisopropylethyl amine (0.54 g, 4.19 mmol), and bromo-tris-pyrrolidino-phosphonium-hexafluoro-phosphate (PyBroP®)
10 (0.798 g, 1.71 mmol) were stirred in DMF (2 mL) for 4 h. The clear solution was poured into an ice-cooled solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (1 N, 40 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x40 mL). The organic layer was washed with potassium hydrogen sulfate solution (1 N, 2x40 mL), sodium hydrogen carbonate (1 N, 1x40 mL) and saturated sodium chloride solution (60 mL). After drying with anhydrous sodium sulfate and evaporation
15 *in vacuo*, the solid residue was recrystallized from 2:1 ethyl acetate/hexane (20 mL) to give the methyl ester in 63% yield. (MS-FAB 514 (M+1). Hydrolysis was accomplished by dissolving the ester in 1:2 ethanol/water (30 mL) containing concentrated sodium hydroxide (1 mL). After stirring for 2 h, the solution was filtered and acidified to a pH of 3, by the addition of 4 N hydrochloric acid. The title compound was obtained by filtration. Yield:
20 370 mg (72% for the hydrolysis). Purity by HPLC was more than 99%. Due to the limited rotation around the secondary amide several of the signals were doubled in the ratio 2:1 (indicated in the list by mj for major and mi for minor). ¹H-NMR(250, MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.4 (s, 9H); 3.2 (m, 2H); 3.6 (m, 2H); 4.1 (s, mj, CONRCH₂COOH); 4.4 (s, mi, CONRCH₂COOH); 5.0 (s, mi, Gua-CH₂CO-); 5.2 (s, mj, Gua-CH₂CO); 5.6 (s, 2H); 6.5 (s,
25 2H); 6.9 (m, mi, BOC-NH); 7.1 (m, mj, BOC-NH); 7.5 (m, 3H); 7.8 (s, 1H); 12.8 (s, 1H). ¹³C-NMR. 170.95; 170.52; 167.29; 166.85; 160.03; 159.78; 155.84; 154.87; 140.63; 136.76; 128.49; 128.10; 113.04; 78.19; 77.86; 66.95; 49.22; 47.70; 46.94; 45.96; 43.62; 43.31 and 28.25.

EXAMPLE 34

30 **Synthesis of 3-BOC-amino-1,2-propanediol.**

3-Amino-1,2-propanediol (1 equivalent, 40 g, 0.44 mol) was dissolved in water (1000 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (1.2 equivalents, 115 g, 0.526 mol) was added in one portion. The reaction mixture was heated to room temperature on a water bath during stirring. The pH was maintained at 10.5 with a solution of sodium hydroxide (1 equivalent, 17.56 g, 0.44 mol) in water (120 mL). When the addition of aqueous sodium hydroxide was completed, the reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Subsequently, ethyl acetate (750 mL) was added to the reaction mixture, followed by cooling to 0°C. The pH was adjusted to 2.5 with 4 N sulphuric acid with vigorous stirring. The phases were separated and the water phase was washed with additional ethyl acetate (6x350 mL). The volume of the organic phase was reduced to 900 mL by evaporation under reduced pressure. The organic phase was then washed with a saturated aqueous solution of potassium hydrogen sulfate diluted to twice its volume (1x1000 mL) and with saturated aqueous sodium chloride (1x500 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated under reduced pressure to yield 50.12 g (60%) of the title compound. The product could be solidified by evaporation from methylene chloride and subsequent freezing. ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃/TMS) δ: 1.43 (s, 9H, Me₃C), 3.25 (m, 2H, CH₂), 3.57 (m, 2H, CH₂), 3.73 (m, 1H, CH). ¹³C-NMR (CDCl₃/TMS) ppm: 28.2 (Me₃C), 42.6 (CH₂), 63.5, 71.1 (CH₂OH, CHOH), 79.5 (Me₃C), 157.0 (C=O).

EXAMPLE 35

20 Synthesis of 2-(BOC-amino)ethyl-L-alanine methyl ester.

3-BOC-amino-1,2-propanediol (1 equivalent, 20.76 g, 0.109 mol) was suspended in water (150 mL). Potassium periodate (1 equivalent, 24.97 g, 0.109 mol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered and the water phase extracted with chloroform (6x250 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to afford an almost quantitative yield of BOC-aminoacetaldehyde as a colorless oil, which was used without further purification in the following procedure.

Palladium on carbon (10%, 0.8 g) was added to MeOH (250 mL) under nitrogen with cooling (0°C) and vigorous stirring. Anhydrous sodium acetate (2 equivalents, 4.49 g, 54.7 mmol) and L-alanine methyl ester, hydrochloride (1 equivalent, 3.82 g, 27.4 mmol) were added. BOC-aminoacetaldehyde (4.79 g, 30.1 mmol, 1.1 eqv) was dissolved in

MeOH (150 mL) and added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was hydrogenated at atmospheric pressure and room temperature until hydrogen uptake had ceased. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, which was washed with additional MeOH. The MeOH was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in
5 water (150 mL) and the pH adjusted to 8 by dropwise addition of 0.5 N NaOH with vigorous stirring. The water phase was extracted with methylene chloride (4x250 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4), filtered through celite, and evaporated under reduced pressure to yield 6.36 g (94%) of the title compound as a clear, pale yellow oil. MS (FAB-MS): m/z (%) = 247 (100, M+1, 191 (90), 147 (18). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (250 MHz, CDCl_3) δ : 1.18
10 (d, $J=7.0$ Hz, 3H, Me), 1.36 (s, 9H, Me_3C), 1.89 (b, 1H, NH), 2.51 (m, 1H, CH_2), 2.66 (m, 1H, CH_2), 3.10 (m, 2H, CH_2), 3.27 (q, $J=7.0$ Hz, 1H, CH), 3.64 (s, 3H, OMe), 5.06 (b, 1H, carbamate NH). $^{13}\text{C-NMR}$ (ppm): 18.8 (Me), 28.2 (Me_3C), 40.1, 47.0 (CH_2), 51.6 (OMe), 56.0 (CH), 155.8 (carbamate C=O), 175.8 (ester C=O).

EXAMPLE 36

15 Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(1-thyminylacetyl)-L-alanine methyl ester.

To a solution of BOC-aminoethyl-(L)-alanine methyl ester (1.23 g, 5 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added Dhbt-OH (0.9 g, 5.52 mmol) and 1-thyminylacetic acid (1.01 g, 5.48 mmol). When 1-thyminylacetic acid dissolved, dichloromethane (10 mL) was added and the solution was cooled in an ice bath. After the reaction mixture had reached 0°C ,
20 DCC (1.24 g, 6.01 mmol) was added. Within 5 minutes after the addition, a precipitate of DCU was seen. After a further 5 minutes, the ice bath was removed. Two hours later, tlc analysis showed the reaction to be complete. The mixture was filtered and the precipitate washed with dichloromethane (100 mL). The resulting solution was extracted twice with 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate (150 mL) and twice with saturated potassium hydrogen
25 sulfate (25 mL) in water (100 mL). After a final extraction with saturated sodium chloride (150 mL), the solution was dried with magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give a white foam. The foam was purified by column chromatography on silica gel using dichloromethane with a methanol gradient as eluent. This yielded a pure compound (>99% by HPLC) (1.08 g, 52.4%). FAB-MS: 413 (M+1) and 431 (M+1 + water). $^1\text{H-NMR}$
30 (CDCl_3) δ : 4.52 (s, 2H, CH_2); 3.73 (s, 3H, OMe); 3.2-3.6 (m, 4H, ethyl CH_2 's); 1.90 (s, 3H, Me in T); 1.49 (d, 3H, Me in Ala, $J=7.3$ Hz); 1.44 (s, 9H, BOC).

EXAMPLE 37**Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(1-thyminylacetyl)-L-alanine.**

The methyl ester of the title compound, Example 36, (2.07 g, 5.02 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (100 mL), and cooled in an ice bath. 2 M Sodium hydroxide (100 mL) was added. After stirring for 10 minutes, the pH of the mixture was adjusted to 3 with 4 M hydrogen chloride. The solution was subsequently extracted with ethyl acetate (3x100 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate. After evaporation, the resulting foam was dissolved in ethyl acetate (400 mL) and a 5 mL of methanol to dissolve the solid material. Petroleum ether then was added until precipitation started. After allowing the mixture to stand overnight at -20°C, the precipitate was removed by filtration. This yielded 1.01 g (50.5%) of pure compound (>99% by HPLC). The compound was recrystallized from 2-propanol. FAB-MS: 399 (M+1). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 11.35 (s, 1H, COO); 7.42 (s, 1H, H'₆); 4.69 (s, 2H, CH'₂); 1.83 (s, 3H, Me in T); 1.50-1.40 (m, 12H, Me in Ala + BOC).

EXAMPLE 38**(a) Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(1-thyminylacetyl)-D-alanine methyl ester.**

To a solution of BOC-aminoethyl alanine methyl ester (2.48 g, 10.1 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) was added Dhbt-OH (1.8 g, 11 mmol) and thyminylacetic acid (2.14 g, 11.6 mmol). After dissolution of 1-thyminylacetic acid, methylene chloride (20 mL) was added and the solution cooled in an ice bath. When the reaction mixture had reached a temperature of 0°C, DCC (2.88 g, 14 mmol) was added. Within 5 minutes of the addition, a precipitate of DCU was seen. After 35 minutes the ice bath was removed. The reaction mixture was filtered 3.5 h later and the precipitate washed with methylene chloride (200 mL). The resulting solution was extracted twice with 5% sodium hydrogen carbonate (200 mL) and twice with saturated potassium hydrogen sulfate in water (100 mL). After final extraction with saturated sodium chloride (250 mL), the solution was dried with magnesium sulfate and evaporated to give an oil. The oil was purified by short column silica gel chromatography using methylene chloride with a methanol gradient as eluent. This yielded a compound which was 96% pure according to HPLC (1.05 g, 25.3%) after precipitation with petroleum ether. FAB-MS: 413 (M+1). ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 5.64 (t, 1H, BOC-NH, J=5.89 Hz); 4.56 (d, 2H, CH'₂); 4.35 (q, 1H, CH in Ala, J=7.25 Hz); 3.74 (s, 3H, OMe);

3.64-3.27 (m, 4H, ethyl H's); 1.90 (s, 3H, Me in T); 1.52-1.44 (t, 12H, BOC + Me in Ala).

(b) Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(1-thyminylacetyl)-D-alanine.

The methyl ester of the title compound (1.57 g, 3.81 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (100 mL) and cooled in an ice bath. Sodium hydroxide (2 M, 100 mL) was added. After stirring for 10 minutes, the pH of the mixture was adjusted to 3 with 4 M hydrogen chloride. The solution was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3x100 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate. After evaporation, the oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL). Petroleum ether was added (to a total volume of 600 mL) until precipitation started. After standing overnight at -20°C, the precipitate was removed by filtration. This afforded 1.02 g (67.3%) of the title compound, which was 94% pure according to HPLC. FAB-MS: 399 (M+1). ¹H-NMR, δ: 11.34 (s, 1H, COOH); 7.42 (s, 1H, H₆); 4.69 (s, 2H, CH₂); 4.40 (q, 1H, CH in Ala, J=7.20 Hz); 1.83 (s, 3H, Me in T); 1.52-1.40 (m, 12H, BOC + Me in Ala).

EXAMPLE 39

15 Synthesis of N-(N'-BOC-3'-aminopropyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)-acetyl]glycine methyl ester.

N-(N'-BOC-3'-aminopropyl)glycine methyl ester (2.84 g, 0.0115 mol) was dissolved in DMF (35 mL), followed by addition of DhbtOH (2.07 g, 0.0127 mol) and 1-thyminylacetic acid (2.34 g, 0.0127 mol). Methylene chloride (35 mL) was added and the mixture cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. After addition of DCC (2.85 g, 0.0138 mol), the mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 h, followed by 1 h at room temperature. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration, washed with methylene chloride (25 mL), and a further amount of methylene chloride (150 mL) was added to the filtrate. The organic phase was extracted with sodium hydrogen carbonate (1 volume saturated diluted with 1 volume water, 6x250 mL), potassium sulfate (1 volume saturated diluted with 4 volumes water, 3x250 mL), and saturated aqueous sodium chloride (1x250 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The solid residue was suspended in methylene chloride (35 mL) and stirred for 1h. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed with methylene chloride (25 mL). The filtrate was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, and the residue purified by column chromatography on silica gel, eluting with a mixture of methanol and methylene chloride (gradient from 3-7% methanol in methylene chloride). This afforded the title compound as a white solid (3.05 g, 64%). M.p.. 76-79°C (decomp.).

Anal. for $C_{18}H_{28}N_4O_7$, found (calc.) C: 52.03 (52.42) H: 6.90 (6.84) N: 13.21 (13.58). The compound showed satisfactory 1H and ^{13}C -NMR spectra.

EXAMPLE 40

Synthesis of N-(N'-BOC-3'-aminopropyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)-acetyl]glycine.

5 N-(N'-BOC-3'-aminopropyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)acetyl]glycine methyl ester (3.02 g, 0.00732 mol) was dissolved in methanol (25 mL) and stirred for 1.5 h with 2 M sodium hydroxide (25 mL). Methanol was removed by evaporation *in vacuo*, and the pH adjusted to 2 with 4 M hydrochloric acid at 0°C. The product was isolated as white crystals by filtration, washed with water (3x10 mL), and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield: 2.19
10 g (75%). Anal. for $C_{17}H_{26}N_4O_7$, H_2O , found (calc.) C: 49.95 (49.03) H: 6.47 (6.29) N: 13.43 (13.45). The compound showed satisfactory 1H and ^{13}C -NMR spectra.

EXAMPLE 41

Synthesis of 3-(1-thyminy)propanoic acid methyl ester.

Thymine (14 g, 0.11 mol) was suspended in methanol. Methyl acrylate (39.6 mL, 0.44 mol) was added, along with catalytic amounts of sodium hydroxide. The solution was
15 refluxed in the dark for 45 h, evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, and the residue dissolved in methanol (8 mL) with heating. After cooling in an ice bath, the product was precipitated by addition of ether (20 mL), isolated by filtration, washed with ether (3x15 mL), and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield: 11.23 g (48%). M.p. 112-119°C. Anal. for $C_9H_{12}N_2O_4$,
20 found (calc.) C: 51.14 (50.94) H: 5.78 (5.70) N: 11.52 (13.20). The compound showed satisfactory 1H and ^{13}C -NMR spectra.

EXAMPLE 42

Synthesis of 3-(1-thyminy)propanoic acid.

3-(1-Thyminy)propanoic acid methyl ester (1 g, 0.0047 mol) was suspended in
25 2 M sodium hydroxide (15 mL), refluxed for 10 minutes. The pH was adjusted to 0.3 with conc. hydrochloric acid. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (10x25 mL). The organic phase was extracted with saturated aqueous sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, to give the title compound as a white solid (0.66 g, 71%). M.p. 118-121°C. Anal. for $C_8H_{10}N_2O_4$, found (calc.) C: 48.38 (48.49) H:

5.09 (5.09) N: 13.93 (14.14). The compound showed satisfactory ^1H and ^{13}C -NMR spectra.

EXAMPLE 43

Synthesis of N-(N'-BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)-propanoyl]glycine ethyl ester.

N-(N'-BOC-aminoethyl)glycine ethyl ester (1 g, 0.0041 mol) was dissolved in
5 DMF (12 mL). DhbtOH (0.73 g, 0.0045 mol) and 3-(1-thyminy)propanoic acid (0.89 g,
0.0045 mol) were added. Methylene chloride (12 mL) was then added and the mixture was
cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. After addition of DCC (1.01 g, 0.0049 mol), the mixture was
stirred at 0°C for 2 h, followed by 1 h at room temperature. The precipitated DCU was
removed by filtration, washed with methylene chloride (25 mL), and a further amount of
10 methylene chloride (50 mL) was added to the filtrate. The organic phase was extracted
with sodium hydrogen carbonate (1 volume saturated diluted with 1 volume water, 6x100
mL), potassium sulfate (1 volume saturated diluted with 4 volumes water, 3x100 mL), and
saturated aqueous sodium chloride (1x100 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, and
evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The solid residue was suspended in methylene chloride
15 (15 mL), and stirred for 1h. The precipitated DCU was removed by filtration and washed
with methylene chloride. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, and the residue
purified by column chromatography on silica gel, eluting with a mixture of methanol and
methylene chloride (gradient from 1 to 6% methanol in methylene chloride). This afforded
the title compound as a white solid (1.02 g, 59%). Anal. for $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_4\text{O}_7$, found (calc.) C:
20 53.15 (53.51) H: 6.90 (7.09) N: 12.76 (13.13). The compound showed satisfactory ^1H and
 ^{13}C -NMR spectra.

EXAMPLE 44

Synthesis of N-(N'-BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)-propanoyl]glycine.

N-(N'-BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[(1-thyminy)propanoyl]glycine ethyl ester (0.83 g,
25 0.00195 mol) was dissolved in methanol (25 mL). Sodium hydroxide (2 M, 25 mL) was
added. The solution was stirred for 1 h. The methanol was removed by evaporation *in*
vacuo, and the pH adjusted to 2 with 4 M hydrochloric acid at 0°C. The product was
isolated by filtration, washed with ether (3x15 mL), and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*.
Yield: 0.769 g, 99%). M.p. 213°C (decomp.).

EXAMPLE 45**Synthesis of Mono-BOC-ethylenediamine (2).**

tert-Butyl-4-nitrophenyl carbonate (1, 10 g, 0.0418 mol) dissolved in DMF (50 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 30 minutes to a solution of ethylenediamine (27.9 mL, 0.418 mol) and DMF (50 mL) and stirred overnight. The mixture was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, and the resulting oil dissolved in water (250 mL). After cooling to 0°C, the pH was adjusted to 3.5 with 4 M hydrochloric acid. The solution was then filtered and extracted with chloroform (3x250 mL). The pH was adjusted to 12 (at 0°C) with 2 M sodium hydroxide, and the aqueous solution extracted with methylene chloride (3x300 mL). After treatment with a solution of saturated aqueous sodium chloride (250 mL), the methylene chloride solution was dried over magnesium sulfate. After filtration, the solution was evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, resulting in 4.22 g (63%) of the product as an oil. ¹H-NMR (90 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 1.44 (s, 9H); 2.87 (t, 2H); 3.1 (q, 2H); 5.62 (sb).

EXAMPLE 46**Synthesis of (N-BOC-aminoethyl)-β-alanine methyl ester.HCl.**

Mono-BOC-ethylenediamine (2) (16.28 g, 0.102 mol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (400 mL) and methyl acrylate (91.5 mL, 1.02 mol) was transferred to the mixture with acetonitrile (200 mL). The solution was refluxed overnight under nitrogen in the dark to avoid polymerization of methyl acrylate. After evaporation to dryness *in vacuo*, a mixture of water and ether (200 mL + 200 mL) was added, and the solution was filtered and vigorously stirred. The aqueous phase was extracted one additional time with ether and then freeze dried to yield a yellow solid. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate yielded 13.09 g (46%) of the title compound. M.p. 138-140°C. Anal. for C₁₁H₂₃N₂O₄Cl, found (calc.) C: 46.49 (46.72) H: 8.38 (8.20) N: 9.83 (9.91) Cl: 12.45 (12.54). ¹H-NMR (90 MHz; DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39 (s, 9H); 2.9 (m, 8H); 3.64 (s, 3H).

EXAMPLE 47**Synthesis of N-[(1-Thyminyl)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl-β-alanine methyl ester.**

(N-BOC-aminoethyl)-β-alanine methyl ester.HCl (3) (2 g, 0.0071 mol) and 1-thyminylacetic acid pentafluorophenyl ester (5) (2.828 g, 0.00812 mol) were dissolved in

DMF (50 mL). Triethyl amine (1.12 mL, 0.00812 mol) was added and the mixture stirred overnight. After addition of methylene chloride (200 mL), the organic phase was extracted with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (3x250 mL), half-saturated solution of aqueous potassium hydrogen sulfate (3x250 mL), and saturated solution of aqueous sodium chloride (250 mL) and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and evaporation to dryness *in vacuo*, resulted in a yield of 2.9 g (99%) of product (oil). ¹H-NMR (250 MHz; CDCl₃; due to limited rotation around the secondary amide several of the signals were doubled) δ: 1.43 (s, 9H); 1.88 (s, 3H); 2.63 (t, 1H); 2.74 (t, 1H); 3.25-3.55 (4xt, 8H); 3.65 (2xt, 2H); 3.66 (s, 1.5); 3.72 (s, 1.5); 4.61 (s, 1H); 4.72 (s, 2H); 5.59 (s, 0.5H); 5.96 (s, 0.5H); 7.11 (s, 1H); 10.33 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 48

Synthesis of N-[(1-thyminy)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl-β-alanine.

N-[(1-Thyminy)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl-β-alanine methyl ester (3 g, 0.0073 mol) was dissolved in 2 M sodium hydroxide (30 mL), the pH adjusted to 2 at 0°C with 4 M hydrochloric acid, and the solution stirred for 2 h. The precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed three times with cold water, and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield: 2.23 g (77%). M.p. 170-176°C. Anal. for C₁₇H₂₆N₄O₇, H₂O, found (calc.) C: 49.49 (49.03) H: 6.31 (6.78) N: 13.84 (13.45). ¹H-NMR (90 MHz; DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38 (s, 9H); 1.76 (s, 3H); 2.44 and 3.29 (m, 8H); 4.55 (s, 2H); 7.3 (s, 1H); 11.23 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: 399 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 49

Synthesis of N-[(1-(N⁴-Z)-cytosinyl)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl-β-alanine methyl ester.

(N-BOC-amino-ethyl)-β-alanine methyl ester.HCl (3) (2 g, 0.0071 mol) and 1-(N-4-Z)-cytosinylacetic acid pentafluorophenyl ester (5) (3.319 g, 0.0071 mol) were dissolved in DMF (50 mL). Triethyl amine (0.99 mL, 0.0071 mol) was added and the mixture stirred overnight. After addition of methylene chloride (200 mL), the organic phase was extracted with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (3x250 mL), half-saturated solution of aqueous potassium hydrogen sulfate (3x250 mL), and saturated solution of aqueous sodium chloride (250 ml), and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and evaporation to dryness, *in vacuo*, resulted in 3.36 g of solid compound which was recrystallized from methanol.

- 68 -

Yield: 2.42 g (64%). M.p. 158-161°C. Anal. for $C_{25}H_{33}N_5O_8$, found (calc.) C: 55.19 (56.49) H: 6.19 (6.26) N: 12.86 (13.18). 1H -NMR (250 MHz; $CDCl_3$; due to limited rotation around the secondary amide several of the signals were doubled) δ : 1.43 (s, 9H); 2.57 (t, 1H); 3.60-3.23 (m's, 6H); 3.60 (s, 5H); 3.66 (s, 1.5H); 4.80 (s, 1H); 4.88 (s, 1H); 5.20 (s, 2H); 7.80-7.25 (m's, 7H). FAB-MS: 532 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 50

Synthesis of N-[(1-(N⁴-Z)-cytosinyl)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl- β -alanine.

N-[(1-(N⁴-Z)-cytosinyl)acetyl]-N'-BOC-aminoethyl- β -alanine methyl ester (0.621 g, 0.0012 mol) was dissolved in 2 M sodium hydroxide (8.5 mL) and stirred for 2 h. Subsequently, the pH was adjusted to 2 at 0°C with 4 M hydrochloric acid and the solution stirred for 2 h. The precipitate was isolated by filtration, washed three times with cold water, and dried over sicapent, *in vacuo*. Yield: 0.326 g (54%). The white solid was recrystallized from 2-propanol and washed with petroleum ether. Mp. 163°C (decomp.). Anal. for $C_{24}H_{31}N_5O_8$, found (calc.) C: 49.49 (49.03) H: 6.31 (6.78) N: 13.84 (13.45). 1H -NMR (250 MHz; $CDCl_3$, due to limited rotation around the secondary amide several of the signals were doubled) δ : 1.40 (s, 9H); 2.57 (t, 1H); 2.65 (t, 1H); 3.60-3.32 (m's, 6H); 4.85 (s, 1H); 4.98 (s, 1H); 5.21 (s, 2H); 5.71 (s, 1H, broad); 7.99-7.25 (m's, 7H). FAB-MS: 518 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 51

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₅-[Gaeg]-[Taeg]₄-Lys-NH₂.

The protected PNA was assembled onto a BOC-Lys(ClZ) modified MBHA resin with a substitution of approximately 0.15 mmol/g (determined by quantitative Ninhydrin reaction). Capping of only uncoupled amino groups was carried out before the incorporation of the BOC-Gaeg-OH monomer.

Stepwise Assembly of H-[Taeg]₅-[Gaeg]-[Taeg]₄-Lys-NH₂ (synthetic protocol).

Synthesis was initiated on 102 mg (dry weight) of preswollen (overnight in DCM) and neutralized BOC-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. The steps performed were as follows: (1) BOC-deprotection with TFA/DCM (dichloromethane) (1:1, v/v), 1x2 minutes and 1x0.5 h, 3 mL; (2) washing with DCM, 4x20 seconds, 3 mL; washing with DMF, 2x20 seconds, 3 mL; washing with DCM, 2x20 seconds, 3 mL, and drain for 30 seconds; (3) neutralization

- 69 -

with DIEA/DCM (1:19 v/v), 2 x 3 minutes, 3 mL; (4) washing with DCM, 4x20 seconds, 3 mL, and drain for 1 minute; (5) addition of 4 equivalents of diisopropyl carbodiimide (0.06 mmol, 9.7 μ L) and 4 equivalents of BOC-Taeg-OH (0.06 mmol, 24 mg) or BocGaeg-OH (0.06 mmol, 30 mg) dissolved in 0.6 mL of 1:1 (v/v) DCM/DMF (final concentration of monomer 0.1 M), the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for 0.5 h while shaking at room temperature; (6) drain for 20 seconds; (7) washing with DMF, 2x20 seconds and 1x2 minutes, 3 mL; washing with DCM 4x20 seconds, 3 mL; (8) neutralization with DIEA/DCM (1:19 v/v), 2x3 minutes, 3 mL; (9) washing with DCM 4x20 seconds, 3 mL, and drain for 1 minute; (10) qualitative Kaiser test; (11) blocking of unreacted amino groups by acetylation with Ac₂O/pyridine/DCM (1:1:2, v/v), 1x0.5 h, 3 mL; and (12) washing with DCM, 4x20 seconds, 2x2 minutes and 2x20 seconds, 3 mL. Steps 1-12 were repeated until the desired sequence was obtained. All qualitative Kaiser tests were negative (straw-yellow colour with no coloration of the beads) indicating near 100% coupling yield. The PNA oligomer was cleaved and purified by the normal procedure. FAB-MS: 2832.11 [M⁺+1] (calc. 2832.15)

EXAMPLE 52

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-Taeg-Aaeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys-NH₂.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-Taeg-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 0.3 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was placed in a 3 mL SPPS reaction vessel. BOC-Taeg-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by *in situ* DCC coupling (single) of the A(Z)aeg residue utilizing 0.19 M of BOC-A(Z)aeg-OH together with 0.15 M DCC in 2.5 mL of 50% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ and a single coupling with 0.15 M BOC-Taeg-OPfp in neat CH₂Cl₂ ("Synthetic Protocol 5"). The synthesis was monitored by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction, which showed about 50% incorporation of A(Z)aeg and about 96% incorporation of Taeg.

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-Taeg-Aaeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys-NH₂.

The protected BOC-Taeg-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 15.6 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 53.1 mg dry H-Taeg-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin. The main peak at 14.4 minutes accounted for less than 50% of the total absorbance. A 0.5 mg portion of the crude product was purified to give approximately 0.1 mg of H-Taeg-Aaeg-[Taeg]₈-Lys-NH₂. For (MH⁺)⁺

the calculated m/z value was 2816.16 and the measured m/z value was 2816.28.

(c) Synthetic Protocol 5.

(1) BOC-deprotection with TFA/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1, v/v), 2.5 mL, 3x1 minute and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2.5 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 2.5 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2.5 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition of 0.47 mmol (0.25 g) BOC-A(Z)aeg-OH dissolved in 1.25 mL of DMF followed by addition of 0.47 mmol (0.1 g) DCC in 1.25 mL of CH₂Cl₂ or 0.36 mmol (0.2 g) BOC-Taeg-OPfp in 2.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂; the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 20-24 h while shaking; (7) washing with DMF, 2.5 mL, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2.5 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 2.5 mL, 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2.5 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling; (12) blocking of unreacted amino groups by acetylation with a 25 mL mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 2 h (except after the last cycle); and (13) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2.5 mL, 6 x 1 minute; (14) 2x2-5 mg samples of protected PNA-resin are removed, neutralized with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v) and washed with CH₂Cl₂ for ninhydrin analyses.

20 EXAMPLE 53

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₂-Aaeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys-NH₂.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 0.5 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS reaction vessel. BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by *in situ* DCC coupling of both the A(Z)aeg and the Taeg residues utilising 0.15 M to 0.2 M of protected PNA monomer (free acid) together with an equivalent amount of DCC in 2 mL neat CH₂Cl₂ ("Synthetic Protocol 6"). The synthesis was monitored by the quantitative ninhydrin reaction which showed a total of about 82% incorporation of A(Z)aeg after coupling three times (the first coupling gave about 50% incorporation; a fourth HOBt-mediated coupling in 50% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ did not increase the total coupling yield significantly) and quantitative incorporation (single couplings) of the Taeg residues.

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₂-Aaeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys-NH₂.

The protected BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 16.2 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 102.5 mg dry H-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-BHA resin. A small portion of the crude product was purified. For (MH⁺)⁺, the calculated m/z value was 2050.85 and the measured m/z value was 2050.90

(c) Synthetic Protocol 6.

(1) BOC-deprotection with TFA/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1, v/v), 2 mL, 3x1 minute and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2 mL, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 2 mL, 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2 mL, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition of 0.44 mmol (0.23 g) BOC-A(Z)aeg-OH dissolved in 1.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂ followed by addition of 0.44 mmol (0.09 g) DCC in 0.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂ or 0.33 mmol (0.13 g) BOC-Taeg-OH in 1.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂ followed by addition of 0.33 mmol (0.07 g) DCC in 0.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂; the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 20-24 h with shaking; (7) washing with DMF, 2 mL, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2 mL, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 2 mL, 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2 mL, 6x1 minute; (11) 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a quantitative ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling; (12) blocking of unreacted amino groups by acetylation with a 25 mL mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 2 h (except after the last cycle); (13) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 2 mL, 6x1 minute; and (14) 2x2-5 mg samples of protected PNA-resin were removed, neutralized with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v) and washed with CH₂Cl₂ for ninhydrin analyses.

EXAMPLE 54**Hybridization Experiments.**

The PNA oligomer H-T4C2TCT-LysNH₂ was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 51. Hybridization experiments with this sequence should resolve the issue of orientation, since it is truly asymmetrical. Such experiments should also resolve the issues of pH-dependency of the T_m, and the stoichiometry of complexes formed.

Hybridization experiments with the PNA oligomer H-T₄C₂TCTC-LysNH₂ were performed as follows:

Row	Hybridized With	pH	T _m (°C)	§
1	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG) ₂ (dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	7.2	55.5	2:1
2	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG) ₂ (dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	9.0	26.0	2:1
3	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG) ₂ (dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	5.0	88.5	2:1
4	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG) ₂ (dA) ₄	7.2	38.0	2:1
5	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG) ₂ (dA) ₄	9.0	31.5	-
6	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG) ₂ (dA) ₄	5.0	52.5	-
7	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG)(dT)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	7.2	39.0	-
8	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG)(dT)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	9.0	<20	-
9	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG)(dT)(dA)(dG)(dA)(dG)	5.0	51.5	-
10	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG) ₂ (dT)(dG)(dA)(dG)	7.2	31.5	-
11	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG) ₂ (dT)(dG)(dA)(dG)	5.0	50.5	-
12	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)dT(dG)(dA) ₄	7.2	24.5	-
13	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)dT(dG)(dA) ₄	9.0	<20	-
14	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dA)dT(dG)(dA) ₄	5.0	57.0	-
15	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dT)(dG) ₂ (dA) ₄	7.2	25.0	-
16	5'-(dG)(dA)(dG)(dT)(dG) ₂ (dA) ₄	5.0	39.5	-
20			52.0	

§ = stoichiometry determined by UV-mixing curves

- = not determined

These results show that a truly mixed sequence gave rise to well-defined melting curves. The PNA oligomers can actually bind in both orientations (compare row 1 and 4), although there is a preference for the N-terminal/5'-orientation. Introducing a single mismatch opposite either T or C caused a lowering of T_m by more than 16°C at pH 7.2; at pH 5.0 the T_m was lowered more than 27°C. This shows that there is a very high degree of sequence-selectivity which should be a general feature for all PNA C/T sequences.

As indicated above, there is a very strong pH-dependency for the T_m , indicating that Hoogsteen basepairing is important for the formation of hybrids. Therefore, it is not surprising that the stoichiometry was found to be 2:1.

The lack of symmetry in the sequence and the very large decrease in T_m when mismatches are present show that the Watson-Crick strand and the Hoogsteen strand are parallel when bound to complementary DNA. This is true for both the orientations, *i.e.*, 5'/N-terminal and 3'/N-terminal.

EXAMPLE 55

T_m s of PNA Oligomers.

The results of hybridization experiments with H-T₅GT₄-LysNH₂ were as follows:

Row	Deoxyoligonucleotide	T_m (°C)
1	5'-(dA) ₅ (dA)(dA) ₄ -3'	55.0
2	5'-(dA) ₅ (dG)(dA) ₄ -3'	47.0
3	5'-(dA) ₅ (dG)(dA) ₄ -3'	56.5
4	5'-(dA) ₅ (dT)(dA) ₄ -3'	46.5
5	5'-(dA) ₄ (dG)(dA) ₅ -3'	48.5
6	5'-(dA) ₄ (dC)(dA) ₅ -3'	55.5
7	5'-(dA) ₄ (dT)(dA) ₅ -3'	47.0

As observed by comparing rows 1, 3, and 6 with rows 2, 4, 5, and 7, G can, in this mode, discriminate between C/A and G/T in the DNA strand, *i.e.*, sequence discrimination is observed. The complex in row 3 was furthermore determined to be 2 PNA: 1 DNA complex by UV-mixing curves.

EXAMPLE 56

Synthesis of PNA 15-mer Containing Four Naturally Occurring Nucleobases: H-[Taeg]-[Aaeg]-[Gaeg]-[Taeg]-[Taeg]-[Aaeg]-[Taeg]-[Caeg]-[Taeg]-[Caeg]-[Taeg]-[Aaeg]-[Taeg]-[Caeg]-[Taeg]-Lys-NH₂.

The protected PNA was assembled onto a BOC-Lys(ClZ) modified MBHA resin with a substitution of approximately 0.145 mmol/g. Capping of only uncoupled amino

groups was carried out before the incorporation of the BOC-Gaeg-OH monomer.

Synthesis was initiated on 100 mg (dry weight) of neutralised BOC-Lys(ClA)-MBHA resin that had been preswollen overnight in DCM. The incorporation of the monomers followed the protocol of Example 28, except at step 5 for the incorporation of the BOC-Aaeg-OH monomer. Step 5 for the present synthesis involved addition of 4 equivalents of diisopropyl carbodiimide (0.06 mM, 9.7 μ L) and 4 equivalents of BOC-Aaeg-OH (0.06 mmol, 32 mg) dissolved in 0.6 mL of DCM/DMF (1:1, v/v) (final concentration of monomer 0.1M). The coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for 1x15 minutes and 1x60 minutes (recoupling).

All qualitative Kaiser tests were negative (straw-yellow color with no coloration of the beads). The PNA oligomer was cleaved and purified by the standard procedure. FAB-MS average mass found(calc.) (M+H) 4145.1 (4146.1).

EXAMPLE 57

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₂-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Taeg-Caeg-Lys-NH₂.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 1 g of wet BOC-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA (0.28 mmol Lys/g) resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS reaction vessel. BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by *in situ* DCC coupling of the five first residues utilizing 0.16 M of BOC-C[Z]-OH, BOC-Taeg-OH or BOC-A(Z)aeg-OH, together with 0.16 M DCC in 2 mL of 50% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ and by analogous *in situ* DIC coupling of the five last residues. Each coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 20-24 h with shaking. The synthesis was monitored by the ninhydrin reaction, which showed nearly quantitative incorporation of all residues except of the first A(Z)aeg residue, which had to be coupled twice. The total coupling yield was about 96% (first coupling, about 89% efficiency).

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₂-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Taeg-Caeg-Lys-NH₂.

The protected BOC-[Taeg]₂-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about

53.4 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 166.1 mg of dry BOC-[Taeg]2-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-A(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Taeg-C(Z)aeg-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. The crude product (53.4 mg) was purified to give 18.3 mg of H-[Taeg]2-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Aaeg-Taeg-Caeg-Taeg-Caeg-Lys-NH₂. For (M+H)⁺, the calculated m/z value = 2780.17 and the measured m/z value = 2780.07.

EXAMPLE 58

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₅-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

The PNA oligomer was assembled on 500 mg (dry weight) of MBHA resin that had been preswollen overnight in DCM. The resin was initially substituted with approximately 0.15 mmol/g BOC-Lys(ClZ) as determined by quantitative ninhydrin reaction. The stepwise synthesis of the oligomer followed the synthetic protocol described in Example 28 employing 0.077 g (0.2 mmol) BOC-Taeg-OH and 31.3 μ L (0.2 mmol) of diisopropylcarbodiimide in 2 mL of 50% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ in each coupling. Capping of uncoupled amino groups was carried out before deprotection in each step. All qualitative Kaiser tests were negative indicating near 100% coupling yield.

EXAMPLE 59

Synthesis of the Backbone Moiety for Scale-up By Reductive Amination.

(a) Preparation of BOC-aminoacetaldehyde.

3-Amino-1,2-propanediol (80 g, 0.88 mol) was dissolved in water (1500 mL) and the solution was cooled to 4°C, after which BOC-anhydride (230 g, 1.05 mol) was added in one portion. The solution was gently heated to room temperature in a water bath. The pH was maintained at 10.5 by the dropwise addition of sodium hydroxide. Over the course of the reaction, a total of 70.2 g of NaOH, dissolved in 480 mL of water, was added. After stirring overnight, ethyl acetate (1000 mL) was added, the mixture cooled to 0°C and the pH adjusted to 2.5 by the addition of 4 M hydrochloric acid. The ethyl acetate layer was removed and the acidic aqueous solution was extracted with more ethyl acetate (8x500 mL). The combined ethyl acetate solution was reduced to a volume of 1500 mL using a rotary evaporator. The resulting solution was washed with half saturated potassium hydrogen sulphate (1500 mL) and then with saturated sodium chloride. It then was dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Yield: 145.3 g (86%).

3-BOC-amino-1,2-propanediol (144.7 g, 0.757 mol) was suspended in water (750 mL) and potassium periodate (191.5 g, 0.833 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen for 2.5 h and the precipitated potassium iodate was removed by filtration and washed once with water (100 mL). The aqueous phase was extracted with chloroform (6x400 mL). The chloroform extracts were dried and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Yield: 102 g (93%) of an oil. BOC-aminoacetaldehyde was purified by kugelrohr distillation at 84°C and 0.3 mmHg, in two portions. Yield: 79 g (77%) as a colorless oil.

(b) Preparation of (N'-BOC-aminoethyl)glycine methyl ester.

Palladium on carbon (10%, 2.00 g) was added to a solution of BOC-aminoacetaldehyde (10 g, 68.9 mmol) in methanol (150 mL) at 0°C. Sodium acetate (11.3 g, 138 mmol) in methanol (150 mL), and glycine methyl ester hydrochloride (8.65 g; 68.9 mmol) in methanol (75 mL) were added. The mixture was hydrogenated at atmospheric pressure for 2.5 h, then filtered through celite and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The material was redissolved in water (150 mL) and the pH adjusted to 8 with 0.5 N NaOH. The aqueous solution was extracted with methylene chloride (5x150 mL). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. This resulted in 14.1 g (88%) yield of (N'-BOC-aminoethyl)glycine methyl ester. The crude material was purified by kugelrohr distillation at 120°C and 0.5 mm Hg to give 11.3 g (70%) of a colorless oil. The product had a purity that was higher than the material produced in example 26 according to tlc analysis (10% methanol in methylene chloride).

Alternatively, sodium cyanoborohydride can be used as reducing agent instead of hydrogen (with Pd(C) as catalyst), although the yield (42%) was lower.

(c) Preparation of (N'-BOC-aminoethyl)glycine ethyl ester.

The title compound was prepared by the above procedure with glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride substituted for glycine methyl ester hydrochloride. Also, the solvent used was ethanol. The yield was 78%.

EXAMPLE 60

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-Tyr-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-Tyr(BrZ)-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 0.2 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS reaction vessel. BOC-Tyr(BrZ)-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by

standard *in situ* DCC coupling utilizing 0.32 M of BOC-CTyr(BrZ)-OH together with 0.32 M DCC in 3 mL neat CH₂Cl₂, overnight. The ninhydrin reaction showed about 97% incorporation of BOC-Tyr(BrZ).

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-Tyr-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

5 The protected BOC-Tyr(BrZ)-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 5.5 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 20.7 mg of dry H-Tyr(BrZ)-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. The crude product was purified to give 2.5 mg of H-Tyr-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

EXAMPLE 61

10 **Solid Phase Synthesis of Dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.**

(a) Stepwise Assembly of Dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.

About 0.3 g of wet BOC-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS reaction vessel. Dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was assembled by coupling of 0.5 M dansyl-Cl in 2 mL of pyridine, overnight. The ninhydrin reaction showed about
15 95% incorporation of the dansyl group.

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of Dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

The protected dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 12 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 71.3 mg of dry dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. The crude product was purified to give 5.4 mg of
20 dansyl-[Taeg]₁₀-Lys-NH₂.

EXAMPLE 62

Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₃-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-NH₂.

(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₃-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-MBHA Resin.

About 0.2 g of the above-mentioned MBHA resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS
25 reaction vessel and neutralized. BOC-[Taeg]₃-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-MBHA resin was assembled by single *in situ* DCC coupling of the C(Z)aeg residue utilizing 0.13 M of BOC-C[Z]aeg-OH together with 0.13 M DCC in 2.5 mL of 50% DMF/CH₂Cl₂ and by coupling the Taeg residues with 0.13 M BOC-Taeg-OPfp in 2.5 mL of CH₂Cl₂. Each coupling reaction was allowed to proceed with shaking overnight. The synthesis was monitored by the ninhydrin
30 reaction, which showed close to quantitative incorporation of all the residues.

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₃-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-NH₂.

The protected BOC-[Taeg]₃-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-MBHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 44.4 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of about 123 mg of dry H-[Taeg]₃-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-MBHA resin. Crude product (11 mg) was purified to give 3.6 mg of H-[Taeg]₃-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-NH₂.

EXAMPLE 63**Solid Phase Synthesis of H-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys-NH₂.****(a) Stepwise Assembly of BOC-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA Resin.**

About 0.3 g of wet H-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin from the earlier synthesis of BOC-[Taeg]₅-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was placed in a 5 mL SPPS reaction vessel. After coupling of the next residue five times, a total incorporation of BOC-C(Z)aeg of 87% was obtained. The five repeated couplings were carried out with 0.18 M BOC-C(Z)aeg-OPfp in 2 mL of TFE/CH₂Cl₂ (1:2, v/v), 2 mL of TFE/CH₂Cl₂ (1:2, v/v), 2 mL of TFE/CH₂Cl₂ (1:2, v/v) with two drops of dioxane and two drops of DIEA (this condition gave only a few per cent coupling yield), 2 mL of TFE/CH₂Cl₂ (1:2, v/v) plus 0.5 g phenol, and 1 mL of CH₂Cl₂ plus 0.4 g of phenol, respectively. The two final Taeg residues were incorporated close to quantitatively by double couplings with 0.25 M BOC-Taeg-OPfp in 25% phenol/CH₂Cl₂. All couplings were allowed to proceed overnight.

(b) Cleavage, Purification, and Identification of H-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys-NH₂.

The protected BOC-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin was treated as described in Example 17(c) to yield about 7 mg of crude material upon HF cleavage of 80.7 mg of dry H-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₂-C(Z)aeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys(ClZ)-MBHA resin. The crude product was purified to give 1.2 mg of H-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₂-Caeg-[Taeg]₄-Lys-NH₂ (>99.9% purity).

EXAMPLE 64**Alternative protecting group strategy for PNA synthesis.****(a) Synthesis of test compounds.**

2-Amino-6-O-benzyl purine: To a solution of 2.5 g (0.109 mol) of sodium in 100 mL of benzyl alcohol was added 10.75 g (0.063 mol) of 2-amino-6-chloropurine. The mixture was stirred for 12 h at 120°C. The solution was cooled to room temperature and neutralized with acetic acid and extracted with 10 portions of 50 mL of 0.2 N sodium hydroxide. The collected sodium hydroxide phases were washed with 100 mL of diethyl ether and neutralized with acetic acid, whereby precipitation starts. The solution was cooled to 0°C and the yellow precipitate was collected by filtration. Recrystallization from ethanol gave 14.2 g (92%) of pure white crystals of the target compound. ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.92 (8H); 7.60-7.40 (benzyl aromatic); 6.36 (2-NH₂); 5.57 (benzyl CH₂).

(2-Amino-6-O-benzyl purinyl)methylethanoate: A mixture of 5 g (0.0207 mol) of 2-amino-6-O-benzylpurine, 30 mL of DMF and 2.9 g (0.021 mol) of potassium carbonate was stirred at room temperature. Methyl bromoacetate (3.2 g, 1.9 mL, 0.0209 mol) was added dropwise. The solution was filtrated after 4 h and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure (4 mm Hg, 40°C). The residue was recrystallized two times from ethyl acetate to give 3.7 g (57%) of the target compound. ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.93 (8H); 7.4-7.6 (benzyl aromatic); 6.61 (2-NH₂); 5.03 (benzyl CH₂); 5.59 (CH₂); 3.78 (OCH₃).

(2-N-p-Toluenesulfonamido-6-O-benzylpurinyl)methyl ethanoate: To a solution of 0.5 g (1.6 mmol) of (2-amino-6-O-benzylpurinyl)methyl ethanoate in 25 mL of methylene chloride was added 0.53 g (1.62 mmol) of *p*-toluenesulfonic anhydride and 0.22 g (1.62 mmol) of potassium carbonate. The mixture was stirred at room temperature. The mixture was then filtered and the solvent removed at reduced pressure (15 mm Hg, 40°C). Diethyl ether was added to the oily residue. The resulting solution was stirred overnight, whereby the target compound (0.415 mg, 55%) precipitated and was collected by filtration. ¹H-NMR (250 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 8.97 (8H); 7.2-7.8 (aromatic); 5.01 (benzyl CH₂); 4.24 (CH₂); 3.73 (OCH₃); 2.43 (CH₃).

(b) Stability of the tosyl protected base residue in TFA and HF.

The material was subjected to the standard deprotection conditions (TFA-deprotection) and the final cleavage conditions with HF. The products were then subjected to HPLC-analysis using a 4 μ RCM 8x10 Nova pack column and solvents A (0.1% TFA in water) and B (0.1% TFA in acetonitrile) according to the following time gradient with

a flow of 2 mL/minute.

	Time	% A	%B
	0	100	0
	5	100	0
5	35	0	100
	37	0	100
	39	100	0

The following retention times were observed: (a) Compound 1: 30.77 minutes; (b) compound 2: 24.22 minutes; and (c) compound 3: 11.75 minutes. The analysis showed that the O⁶-benzyl group was removed both by TFA and HF, whereas there was no cleavage of the tosyl group in TFA, but quantitative removal in HF under the standard cleavage conditions.

EXAMPLE 65

Synthesis of 5-bromouracil-N¹-methyl acetate.

5-Bromouracil (5 g, 26.2 mmol) and potassium carbonate (7.23 g, 52.3 mmol) were suspended in DMF (75 mL). Methyl bromoacetate (2.48 mL, 26.1 mmol) was added over a period of 5 minutes. The suspension was stirred for 2 h at room temperature and then filtered. The solid residue was washed twice with DMF, and the combined filtrates were evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was an oil containing the title compound, DMF and some unidentified impurities. It was not necessary to purify the title compound before hydrolysis. ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) δ: 8.55 (impurity); 8.27 (CBr=CHN); 8.02 (impurity); 4.76 (impurity); 4.70 (impurity); 4.62 (NCH₂COOCH₃); 3.78 (COOCH₃); 2.96 (DMF); 2.80 (DMF). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 168.8 (COOCH₃); 172.5 (CH=CBrCON); 161.6 (DMF); 151.9 (NCON); 145.0 (CO-CBr=CHN); 95.6 (COCBr=CHN); 52.6 (impurity); 52.5 (OCH₃); 49.7 (impurity); 48.8 (NCH₂COOMe); 43.0 (impurity); 36.0 (DMF). UV(Methanol; nm_{max}); 226; 278. IR (KBr;cm⁻¹; 3158s (NH); 1743vs (C=O, COOMe); 1701vs (C=O, CONH); 1438vs (δ CH, CH₃O); 1223vs (C-O, COOMe); 864 m (δ CH, Br=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment): 265/263 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 66

Synthesis of (5-bromouracil)acetic acid.

Water (30 mL) was added to the oil of the crude product from Example 65 and

the mixture was dissolved by adding sodium hydroxide (2 M, 60 mL). After stirring at 0°C for 10 minutes, hydrochloric acid (4 M, 45 mL) was added to adjust the pH of the solution to 2, and the title compound precipitated. After 50 minutes, the solid residue was isolated by filtration, washed once with cold water, and dried *in vacuo* over sicapent. Yield: 2.46 g (38%). Mp, 250°-251°C. Anal. for C₆H₃BrN₂O₄. Found (calc.): C: 28.78 (28.94); H: 2.00 (2.02); Br: 32.18 (32.09); N: 11.29 (11.25). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) δ: 12.55 (1H, s, COOH); 11.97 (1H, s, NH); 8.30 (1H, s, C=C-H); 4.49 (2H, s, NCH₂COOH). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 169.4 (COOH); 159.8 (NHCOBr=CH); 150.04 (NCON); 145.8 (COBr=CHN); 94.6 (COBr=CHN); 48.8 (NCH₂COOH). UV (Methanol; nm_{max}); 226; 278. IR (KBr; cm⁻¹); 3187s (NH); 1708vs (C=O, COOH); 1687vs; 1654VS (C=O, CONH); 1192s (C-O, COOH); 842 m (δ CH, Br-C=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment, relative intensity); 251/249 (M + H, 5).

EXAMPLE 67

Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(5-bromouracil)methylene-carbonoylglycine ethyl ester.

BOC-aminoethylglycine ethyl ester (1.8 g, 7.30 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL). Dhbt-OH (1.31 g, 8.03 mmol) was added, whereby a precipitate was formed. DMF (2x10 mL) was added until the precipitate was dissolved. The product of Example 66 (2 g, 8.03 mmol) was added slowly to avoid precipitation. Methylene chloride (30 mL) was added, and the mixture was cooled to 0°C and then filtered. The precipitate (DCU) was washed twice with methylene chloride. To the combined filtrate was added methylene chloride (100 mL). The mixture was washed with 3x100 mL of half-saturated NaHCO₃-solution (H₂O:saturated NaHCO₃ solution, 1:1, v/v), then with 2x100 mL of dilute KHSO₄ solution (H₂O:saturated KHSO₄ solution, 4:1, v/v), and finally with saturated NaCl solution (1x100 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* (about 15 mm Hg and then about 1 mm Hg). The residue was suspended in methylene chloride (35 mL), stirred for 45 minutes at room temperature, and the DCU filtered. Petroleum ether (2 volumes) was added dropwise to the filtrate at 0°C, whereby an oil precipitated. The liquor was decanted and the remaining oil dissolved in methylene chloride (20-50 mL). Precipitated was effected by the addition of petroleum ether (2 volumes). This procedure was repeated 5 times until an impurity was removed.

The impurity can be seen observed by tlc with 10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ as the developing solvent. The resulting oil was dissolved in methylene chloride (25 mL) and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, which caused solidification of the title compound. Yield: 2.03 g ((58%). Mp. 87°-90°C. Anal. for C₁₇H₂₅BrN₄O₇. Found (calc.): C: 42.33 (42.78); H: 5.15 (5.28); Br: 17.20 (16.74); N: 1.69 (11.74). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 1.93 & 11.92 (1H, s, C=ONHC=O); 8.09 & 8.07 (1H, s, C=C-H); 7.00 & 6.80 (1H, t, BOC-NH); 4.80 & 4.62 (2H, s, NCH₂CON); 4.35 & 4.24 (2H, s, NCH₂COOEt); 4.27-4.15 (2H, m, COOCH₂CH₃); 3.47-3.43 (2H, m, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 3.28-3.25 & 3.12-3.09 (2H, m, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 1.46 & 1.45 (9H, s, *t*-Bu); 1.26 & 1.32 (3H, t, J=7.1, COOCH₂CH₃). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 169.3 & 169.0 (*t*-BuOC=O); 167.4 & 167.1 (COOEt); 159.8 (C=C-CON); 155.9 (NCH₂CON); 150.4 (NCON); 145.9 (COCB_r-CHN); 94.5 (COCB_r=CHN); 78.2 (Me₃C); 61.3 & 60.7 (COCH₂CH₃); 49.1 & 48.0 (NCH₂COOH); 48.0 & 47.0 (NCH₂CON); 38.6 (BocNHCH₂CH₂N); 38.2 (BocNHCH₂CH₂N); 26.3 (C(CH₃)₃); 14.1 (COCH₂CH₃). UV (Methanol; _{max} NM): 226; 280. IR (KBr, CM⁻¹): 3200ms, broad (NH); 168vs, vbroad (C=O, COOH, CONH); 1250s (C-O, COOEt); 1170s (C-O, COO*t*-Bu); 859m (∂ CH, Br-C=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment, relative intensity): 479/477 (M + H, 5); 423/421 (M + 2H - *t*-Bu, 8); 379/377 (M + 2H - Boc, 100); 233/231 (M - backbone, 20).

EXAMPLE 68

20 Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(5-bromouracyl-N¹-methylene-carbonyl)glycine.

The product of Example 67 (1.96 g, 4.11 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (30 mL) by heating, and then cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydroxide (2 M, 30 mL) was added, and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. HCl (1 M, 70 mL) was added pH 2). The water phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x65 mL + 7x40 mL). The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed with saturated NaCl solution (500 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. Yield: 1.77 g (96%). Mp. 92°-97°C. Anal. for C₁₅H₂₁BrN₄O₇. Found (calc.): C: 40.79 (40.10); H: 5.15 (4.71); Br: 14.64 (17.70); N: 11.35 (12.47). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 12.83 (1H, s, COOH); 11.93 & 11.91 (1H, s, C=ONHC=O); 8.10 & 8.07 (1H, s, C=C-H); 7.00 & 6.81 (1H, t, BOC-NH); 4.79 & 4.61 (2H, s, NCH₂CON); 4.37 & 4.25 (2H, s, NCH₂COOH); 3.46-3.39 (2H, m, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 3.26-3.23 & 3.12-3.09 (2H, m,

- 83 -

- BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 1.46 (9H, s, *t*-Bu). ¹³C-NMR 9DMSO-d₆ 250 MHz) ppm: 170.4 (*t*-BuOC=O); 166.9(COOH); 159.7 (C=C-CON); 155.8 (NCH₂CON); 150.4 (NCON); 145.9 (COCB=CHN); 94.4 (COCB=CHN); 78.1 (Me₃C); 49.1 & 48.0 (NCH₂COOH); 47.7 & 47.8 (NCH₂CON); 38.6 (BOC-NHC₂H₅N); 38.1 (BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 28.2 (C(CH₃)₃).
- 5 UV (Methanol; nm_{max}); 226; 278. IR (KBr, cm⁻¹): 3194ms, broad (NH); 1686vs, vbroad (C=O COOH, CONH); 1250s (C-O, COOH); 1170s (C-O, COO*t*-Bu); 863m (δ CH, Br-C=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment, relative intensity): 449/451 (M + H, 70); 349/351 (M + 2H - BOC, 100); 231/233 (M - backbone, 20).

EXAMPLE 6910 **Synthesis of uracil-N¹-methyl acetate.**

- Uracil (10 g, 89.2 mmol) and potassium carbonate (24.7 g, 178 mmol) were suspended in DMF (250 mL). Methyl bromoacetate (8.45 mL, 89.2 mmol) was added over a period of 5 minutes. The suspension was stirred overnight under nitrogen at room temperature, and then filtered. Thin-layer chromatography (10% methanol in ethylene
- 15 chloride) indicated incomplete conversion of uracil. The solid residue was washed twice with DMF, and the combined filtrates were evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The precipitate was suspended in water (60 mL) and HCl (2.5 mL, 4 M) was added (pH 2). The suspension was stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C, and then filtered. The precipitated title compound was washed with water and dried, *in vacuo*, over sicapent. Yield: 9.91 g (60%).
- 20 Mp. 182-183°C. Anal. for C₆H₈N₂O₄. Found (calc.): C: 45.38 (45.66); H: 4.29 (4.38); N: 15.00 (15.21). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 1.47 (1H, s, NH); 7.68 (1H, d, J_{H-C-C-H}=7.9), CH=CHN); 5.69 (1H, d, J_{H-C-C-H}=7.9, CH=CHN); 4.59 (2H, s, NCH₂COOMe); 3.76 (3H, s, COOCH₃). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 168.8 (COOMe); 164.0 (C=C-CON); 151.1 (NCON); 146.1 (COCH=CHN); 101.3 (COCH=CHN); 52.5 (COOCH₃);
- 25 48.7 (NCH₂COOMe). UV (Methanol; nm_{max}): 226; 261. IR (KBr; cm⁻¹): 3164s (NH); 1748vs (C=O, COOMe); 1733vs (C=O, CONH); 1450vs (δ CH, CH₃O); 1243VS (C-O, COOMe); 701m (δ CH, H-C=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment); 185 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 70**Synthesis of uracilacetic acid.**

- 30 Water (90 mL) was added to the product of Example 69 (8.76 g, 47.5 mmol),

- 84 -

followed by sodium hydroxide (2 M, 40 mL). The mixture was heated for 40 minutes, until all the methyl ester has reacted. After stirring at 0°C for 15 minutes, hydrochloric acid (4 M, 25 mL) was added (pH 2). The title compound precipitated and the mixture was filtered after 2-3 h. The precipitate was washed once with the mother liquor and twice with cold water and dried *in vacuo* over sicapent. Yield: 6.66 g (82%). Mp. 288°-289°C. Anal. for C₆H₆N₂O₄. Found (calc.): C: 42.10 (42.36), H: 3.43 (3.55); N: 16.25 (16.47)/¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 13.19 (1H, s, COOH); 11.41 (1H, s, NH); 7.69 (1H, d, J_{H-C=C-H}=7.8, J_{H-C-C-N-H}=2.0, COCH=CHN); 4.49 (2H, s, NCH₂COOH). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 2509 MHz) ppm: 169.9 (COOH); 163.9 (CH=CHCON); 151.1 (NCON); 146.1 (COCH=CHN); 100.9 (COCH=CHN); 48.7 NCH₂COOH. UV (Methanol; nm_{max}): 246; 263. IR (KBr; cm⁻¹): 3122s (NH); 1703vs (C=O, COOH); 1698vs, 1692vs (C=O, CONH); 1205s (C-O, COOH); 676 (δ CH, H-C=C-H). FAB-MS m/z (assignment): 171 (M + H).

EXAMPLE 71

15 Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(uracil-N¹-methylene-carbonyl)glycine ethyl ester.

(BOC-aminoethyl)glycine ethyl ester (2 g, 8.12 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL). Dhbt-OH (1.46 g, 8.93 mmol) was added and a precipitate was formed. DMF (2x10 mL) was added until all was dissolved. The product of Example 70 (1.52 g, 8.93 mmol) was added slowly to avoid precipitation. Methylene chloride (30 mL) was added and the mixture was cooled to 0°C, after which DDC (2.01g, 9.74 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 h at 0°C, at 2 h at room temperature, and then filtered. The precipitated DCU was washed twice with methylene chloride. To combined filtrates was added methylene chloride (100 mL), and the solution washed with 3x100 mL of half-saturated NaHCO₃ solution (H₂O:saturated NaHCO₃ solution, 1:1, v/v), then with 2x100 mL of dilute KHSO₄ solution (H₂O:saturated KHSO₄ solution, 4:1, v/v) and finally with saturated NaCl solution (1x100 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* (about 15 mm Hg and then about 1 mm Hg). The residue was suspended in methylene chloride (32 mL), and stirred for 35 minutes at room temperature, and 30 minutes at 0°C, and then filtered. The precipitate (DCU) was washed with methylene chloride. Petroleum ether (2 volumes) was added dropwise to the combined filtrate at 0°C, which caused separation of an oil. The mixture was decanted, the remaining

oil was then dissolved in methylene chloride (20 mL), and then again precipitated by addition of petroleum ether (2 volumes). This procedure was repeated 5 times until an impurity was removed. The impurity can be seen by tlc with 10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ as the developing solvent. The resulting oil was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 mL) and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*, which caused solidification of the title compound. Yield: 1.71 g (53%). Mp. 68.5° - 75.7°C. Anal for C₁₇H₂₆N₄O₇. Found (calc.): C: 50.61 (51.25); H: 6.48 (6.58); N: 13.33 (14.06). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 11.36 (1H, s, C=ONHC=O); 7.51 & 7.47 (1H, d, J_{H-C=C-H} 6.1; COCH=X-H); 7.00 & 6.80 (1H, t, BOC-NH); 5.83 & 5.66 (1H, d, J_{H-C=C-H} 5.7, COCH=CH); 4.78 & 4.60 (2H, s, NCH₂CON); 4.37 & 4.12 (2H, s, NCH₂COOEt); 4.30 - 4.15 (2H, m, COOCH₂CH); 3.49-3.46 (2H, m, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂n); 3.27 3.23 & 3.11-3.09 (2H, m, BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N; 1.46 (9H, s, *t*-Bu); 1.39-1.23 (3H, m, COOCH₂CH₃). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 169.4 & 169.0 (*t*-BuOC=O); 167.6 & 167.3 (COOEt); 163.8 (CH=CHCON); 155.8 (NCH₂CON); 151.0 (NCON); 146.3 (COCH=CHN); 100.8 (COCH=CHN); 78.1 (Me₃C); 61.2 & 60.6 (COOCH₂CH₃); 49.1 (NCH₂COOEt); 47.8 & 47.0 (NCH₂CON); 38.6 (BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 38.1 & 37.7 (BOC-NHCH₂N); 28.2 (C(CH₃)₃); 14.1 (CO-OCH₂CH₃. UV (Methanol; _{max} nm); 226; 264. IR (KBr; cm⁻¹): 3053m (NH); 1685vs, vbroad (C=O, COOH, CONH); 1253s (C-O, COOEt); 1172s (C-O, COO*t*-Bu); 718w (∂ CH, C-C-C-H), FAB-MS m/z (assignment, relative intensity); 399 (M + H, 35); 343 (M + 2H - *t*-Bu, 100); 299 (M + 2H - BOC, 100); 153 (M-backbone, 30).

EXAMPLE 72

Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-(uracilmethylene-carbonyl)glycine.

The product of Example 71 (1.56 g, 3.91 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (20 mL) and then cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydroxide (2 M, 20 mL) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 75 minutes at 0°C. Hydrochloric acid (1 M, 46 mL) was added (pH 2). The water phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3X50 mL + 7X30 mL). The combined ethyl acetate extracts were washed with saturated NaCl solution (360 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in methanol and evaporated to dryness, *in vacuo*. Yield: 0.55 g (38%). Mp 164° - 170°C. Anal. for C₁₅H₂₂N₄O₇. Found (calc.): C: 46.68 (48.65); H: 6.03 (5.99); N: 14.61 (15.13). ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz, J in Hz) δ: 12.83 (1H, s,

- 86 -

COOH); 11.36 (1H, s, C=ONHC=O); 7.52-7.45 (1H, m, COCH=CHN); 7.00 & 6.82 (1H, t, BOC-NH); 5.67-5.62 (1H, m, COCH=CHN); 4.76 & 4.58 (2H, s, NCH₂CON); 4.26 & 4.05 (2H, s, NCH₂COOH); 3.46-3.39 (2H, m, BOCNHCH₂CH₂N); 3.25-3.23 & 3.15-3.09 (2H, m, BOCNHCH₂CH₂N); 1.46 (9H, s, *t*-Bu). ¹³C-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 250 MHz) ppm: 170.5 (*t*-BuOC=O); 167.2 (COOH); 163.9 (C=C-CON); 155.8 (NCH₂CON); 151.1 (NCON); 146.4 (COCH=CHN); 100.8 (COCH=CHN); 78.1 (Me₃C); 49.1 & 47.8 (NCH₂COOH); 47.6 & 46.9 (NCH₂CON); 38.6 (BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 38.1 & 37.6 (BOC-NHCH₂CH₂N); 28.2 (C(CH₃)₃). UV (Methanol; _{max} nm); 226; 264. IR (KBr; cm⁻¹); 3190 (NH); 1685vs, vbroad (C=O, COOH, CONH); 1253s (C-O, COOH); 1171s (C-O, COO*t*-Bu); 682w (CH, H-C=C-H). FAB-MS *m/z* (assignment, relative intensity): 371 (M + H, 25); 271 (M + H -Boc, 100).

EXAMPLE 73**Synthesis of H-U10-LysNH₂.**

Synthesis of the title compound was accomplished by using the following protocol: (1) BOC-deprotection with TFA/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1, v/v), 3x1 minute and 1x30 minutes; (2) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 6x1 minute; (3) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 3x2 minutes; (4) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 6x1 minute, and drain for 1 minute; (5) at some stages of the synthesis, 2-5 mg sample of PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a ninhydrin analysis to determine the substitution; (6) addition of BOC-protected PNA monomer (free acid) in DMF followed by addition of DCC in CH₂Cl₂; the coupling reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 24 h with shaking; (7) washing with DMF, 1x2 minutes; (8) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 4x1 minute; (9) neutralization with DIEA/CH₂Cl₂ (1: 19, v/v), 2x2 minutes; (10) washing with CH₂Cl₂, 6x1 minute; (11) occasionally, 2-5 mg sample of protected PNA-resin was removed and dried thoroughly for a ninhydrin analysis to determine the extent of coupling; (12) at some stages of the synthesis, unreacted amino groups were blocked by acetylation with a mixture of acetic anhydride/pyridine/CH₂Cl₂ (1:1:2, v/v/v) for 2 h followed by washing with CH₂Cl₂, 6x1 minute, and, occasionally, ninhydrin analysis.

The synthesis was initiated on approximately 100 mg of Lys(ClZ)-MHBA-resin. The crude product (12 mg) was pure enough for hybridization studies. The hybrid between 5'-(dA)10 and H-U10 had T_m of 67.5°C.

EXAMPLE 74**Synthesis of ethyl-N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetate (14, Figure 7a).**

To a suspension of 2,6-diaminopurine (3 g, 19.46 mmol) in dry DMF (90 mL) was added NaH (60% in oil, 0.87 g, 21.75 mmol). After 1 hour ethyl bromoacetate (4.23 g, 25.34 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture became homogenous in 30 minutes and was allowed to stir for an additional 90 minutes. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* resulting in a tan powder. The tan powder was then refluxed with 1,4-dioxane (200 mL) for 10 minutes and filtered through celite. The solution was concentrated to give a light yellow powder. To the light yellow powder (5.52 g) in 1,4-dioxane (150 mL) was added freshly prepared N-benzyloxycarbonyl-N'-methylimidazolium triflate (10.7 g, 29.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h resulting in a reddish solution. The dioxane was removed *in vacuo* and the crude material was recrystallized from MeOH:diethyl ether to give 4.56 g (63%) of the title compound as a cream-colored solid.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 10.12 (bs, 1H), 7.43 (m, 5H), 6.40 (bs, 2H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 4.94 (s, 2H), 4.18 (q, J = 7.2, 3H), 1.21 (t, J = 7.2, 3H). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆) ppm: 167.81, 159.85, 154.09, 152.07, 149.77, 140.62, 136.42, 128.22, 127.74, 127.61, 166.71, 65.87, 61.21, 43.51, 13.91.

EXAMPLE 75**Synthesis of N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetic acid (15, Figure 7a).**

Ethyl-N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetate (14, 3 g, 8.1 mmol) was dissolved in NaOH (2 N, 30 mL). After 1 h the solution was acidified to pH 2.5 with 2 M HCl. The precipitate was filtered, washed with water, and dried to give 2.82 g (98%) of the title compound as a white solid.

IR (KBr): 3300, 3095, 1750, 1630, 1590, 1410. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 10.11 (s, 1H), 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.45-7.33 (m, 5H), 6.40 (s, 2H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 4.83 (s, 2H).

EXAMPLE 76**Synthesis of BOC-aminoacetaldehyde (16, Figure 7b).**

The title compound was prepared according to a published literature procedure (Dueholm *et al.*, *Organic Preparations and Procedures Intl.*, 1993, 25, 457).

EXAMPLE 77**Synthesis of lysine-(2-chlorobenzoyloxy) allyl ester (17, Figure 7b).**

The title compound was prepared according to a published literature procedure (Waldmann and Horst, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.*, 1983, 1712).

5 EXAMPLE 78**Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-Lysine-(2-chlorobenzoyloxy) allyl ester (18, Figure 7b).**

p-Toluenesulphonic acid-protected lysine (11 mmol) was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (100 mL) and washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (100 mL). The aqueous layer was back-
10 extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and the CH₂Cl₂ layers were combined, dried over Na₂SO₄, and concentrated to give the free lysine as an oil. The resulting oil was taken up in methanol (50 mL) and cooled to 0°C. To the resulting solution was added sodium cyanoborohydride (5.9 mmol) followed by acetic acid (0.75 mL). After 5 minutes BOC-aminoacetaldehyde (13.3 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 1 h. The
15 methanol was removed *in vacuo* and the oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate (40 mL), washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, brine, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give a clear colorless oil. This oil was dissolved in dry ether (80 mL), cooled to -20°C, and a molar equivalent of HCl in ether was added slowly. The resulting white solid was collected by filtration and air dried. Precipitation of the air-dried white solid from dry ether gave
20 analytically pure title compound.

EXAMPLE 79**Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetyl]-Lysine-(2-chlorobenzoyloxy) allyl ester (19, Figure 7b).**

To N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetic acid (15, 3.6 g, 10.5
25 mmol) in DMF (150 mL) was added N,N-diisopropylethylamine (2.75 mL, 21 mmole), and N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-lysine-(2-chlorobenzoyloxy) allyl ester hydrochloride (7.31 g, 15.8 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under nitrogen for 20 minutes and bromo-tris-pyrrolidino-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBrop, 5.4 g, 11.6 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature under an atmosphere of
30 nitrogen gas. The resulting mixture was concentrated and dissolved in ethyl acetate. The

ethyl acetate solution was washed with aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate, separated and concentrated. The crude material was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane: methanol (6:3:1, v/v/v), as the eluent. Concentration and drying of the appropriate fractions gave 3.1 g (37%) of the title compound.

5 EXAMPLE 80

Synthesis of N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetyl]-Lysine-(2-chlorobenzyloxy) (20, Figure 7c).

To N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-N-[N⁶-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2,6-diaminopurin-9-yl-acetyl]-lysine-(2-chlorobenzyloxy) allyl ester hydrochloride (19, 3.1 gm, 3.93 mmol) was added
10 THF (100 mL) morpholine (3.5 mL, 39.3 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium(0) (0.45 gm, 0.393 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen for 2.5 h at room temperature. The resulting mixture was concentrated and dissolved in ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with aqueous saturated potassium hydrogen sulfate (that was half-diluted with water), separated
15 and concentrated. The crude material was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using chloroform:methanol (9:1, v/v), as the eluent. Concentration and drying of the appropriate fractions gave 1.25 g (42%) of the title compound.

EXAMPLE 81

Standard Protocol For PNA Synthesis and Characterization.

20 **Instrument:** PerSeptive Biosystems 8909 Expedite.

Synthesis Scale: 2 μ mole.

Reagents:

Wash A: 20% DMSO in NMP

Wash B: 2 M Collidine in 20% DMSO in NMP

25 **Deblock:** 5% *m*-Cresol, 95% TFA

Neutralizer: 1 M DIEA in 20% DMSO in NMP

Cap: 0.5 M Acetic Anhydride, 1.5 M Collidine in 20% DMSO in NMP

Activator: 0.2 M HATU in DMF

Monomers: 0.22 M in 2 M Collidine (50% Pyridine in DMF)

30 **Synthesis:** The solid support (BOC-BHA-PEG-resin) is washed with 708 μ l of Wash A.

- 90 -

Deblock (177 μL) is passed through the column 3 times over 6.3 minutes. The resin is then washed with 1416 μL of Wash A. The free amine is neutralized with 1063 μL of Neutralizer. The resin is washed with 1062 μL of Wash B. Monomer and Activator (141 μL each) are slowly added to the column over 14 minutes. The resin is washed with 708 μL of Wash B and 708 μL of Wash A. Unreacted amine is capped with slow addition of 708 μL of Cap solution over 5 minutes. The resin is then washed 2124 μL of Wash A. The cycle is repeated until synthesis of the desired PNA sequence is completed.

Cleavage: The PNA-resin is washed with 5 mL of MeOH and dried under vacuum. The dried resin is emptied into a 1.5 mL Durapore ultrafree filter unit. Thioanisole (25 μL), 25 μL of *m*-Cresol, 100 μL of TFA and 100 μL of TFMSA is added to the resin, vortexed for about 30 seconds and allowed to stand for 2 h. The reaction mixture is then centrifuged for 5 minutes at 10 K and the inner tube with resin is removed. Approximately 1.5 mL of ether is added to the TFA solution to precipitate the product. The TFA solution is vortexed, followed by centrifugation at 10 K for 2 minutes. The ether is removed *in vacuo*. Ether precipitation and centrifugation are repeated an additional 2 times. The dry pellet is heated in a heat block (55°C) for 15 to 30 minutes to remove excess ether and redissolved in 200 μL of H_2O . Solvent is added to 100 mg of Dowex Acetate Resin in a 1.5 mL Durapore ultrafree filter unit, vortexed, allowed to stand for 30 minutes and centrifuged at 10 K for 2 minutes.

Characterization: The absorbance of a 1 μL sample in 1 mL of H_2O is measured at 260 nm. Isopropanol (50%) in H_2O with 1% Acetic acid (100 μL) is added to 4 μL of the sample. This sample is characterized by electrospray mass spectrometry.

Common Abbreviations

NMP:	N-methyl pyrrolidinone
25 TFA:	Trifluoroacetic acid
DIEA:	N,N-Diisopropylethylamine
HATU:	O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate
TFMSA:	Trifluormethanesulfonic Acid

30 EXAMPLE 82

PNA Oligomers Containing 2,6-diaminopurine Attached to Aminoethyl Lysine

Backbone.

Using the title compound of Example 80, the aminoethylglycine PNA monomers of examples 24 through 34, and the standard protocol for PNA synthesis illustrated in Example 81, the following PNA oligomers were prepared:

- 5 SEQ ID NO:1 TTT-CGC-GDkC-CCDk
 SEQ ID NO:2 GCDk-DkDkC-GC

C, G, and T are nucleobases cytosine, guanine, and thymine respectively, attached to an aminoethylglycine PNA backbone. Dk is 2,6-diaminopurine attached to an aminoethyl-lysine backbone as illustrated in the previous examples. Aminoethyl-lysine
 10 backbone is an aminoethyl-glycine backbone with butylamine substituent at α -position, *i.e.*, lysine side-chain.

EXAMPLE 83**Synthesis of PNA Oligomers Having At Least One A, G, C, or T Attached To a Lysine-containing Backbone.**

15 Using the procedures of Example 81, the aminoethylglycine PNA monomers of examples 24 through 34, and monomers of Examples 74-80, the following PNA oligomers were synthesized (Tk is thymine attached to an aminoethyl-lysine backbone; Gk is guanine attached to an aminoethyl-lysine backbone; Ck is cytosine attached to an aminoethyl-lysine backbone):

- 20 SEQ ID NO:3 CGC-TkTkG-GCA-GTkC-TkC
 SEQ ID NO:4 CgkC-TkTkGk-GkCA-GkTkC-TkC
 SEQ ID NO:5 CkGkCk-TkTkG-GkCkA-GkTkCk-TkCk
 SEQ ID NO:6 TkTkTk-AGG-ATkTk-CGTk-GCTk-C
 SEQ ID NO:7 TkCG-TkGC-TkCA-TkGG
 25 SEQ ID NO:8 GCG-TkTkTk-GC
 SEQ ID NO:9 CGC-TkGC-AGA-TkGC-GGTk-Tk
 SEQ ID NO:10 CCG-CCG-GCTk-CAG-TkCTk-Tk
 SEQ ID NO:11 CATk-CGTk-GGC-GGTk-TkAG-G

- 92 -

	SEQ ID NO:12	TkCG-GGTk-GAG-TkGG-TkAG
	SEQ ID NO:13	CAC-TkCA-GTkG-CAA-CTkC-Tk
	SEQ ID NO:14	CCTk-CCA-CTkC-CCG-CCTk-C
	SEQ ID NO:15	CkATk-CkGTk-GGCK-GGTk-TkAG-G
5	SEQ ID NO:16	CAC-TkCA-GTkG-CAA-CTkC-Tk
	SEQ ID NO:17	CCTk-CCA-CTkC-CCG-CCTk-C
	SEQ ID NO:18	CAGk-CCA-TkGG-TTkC-CCC-CkCA-AC
	SEQ ID NO:19	Fla-GTkG-AGG-GTkC-TkCTk-CTC
	SEQ ID NO:20	Cy5-GTkG-AGG-GTkC-TkCTk-CTC
10	SEQ ID NO:21	Fla-CAA-ATkG-GTkTk-CTkC-GAA
	SEQ ID NO:22	Cy5-CAA-ATkG-GTkTk-CTkC-GAA
	SEQ ID NO:23	Fla-ACC-TGkA-GkGGk-AGkC-CAG
	SEQ ID NO:24	Cy5-ACC-TGkA-GkGGk-AGkC-CAG
	SEQ ID NO:25	Fla-TkTkG-GCC-ACG-TkCC-TkGA
15	SEQ ID NO:26	Cy5-TkTkG-GCC-ACG-TkCC-TkGA
	SEQ ID NO:27	Fla-TGkC-CCG-GkGkA-AAA-CGkT
	SEQ ID NO:28	Cy5-TGkC-CCG-GkGkA-AAA-CGkT
	SEQ ID NO:29	Fla-CCTk-CGTk-GCA-CGTk-TkCTk
	SEQ ID NO:30	Cy5-CCTk-CGTk-GCA-CGTk-TkCTk
20	SEQ ID NO:31	Fla-TkGG-ATkG-TkCG-ACC-TkCTk

EXAMPLE 84**Synthesis of methyl α -formylsuccinate.**

This procedure is a modification of published method (Fissekis *et al.*, *Biochemistry*, **1970**, 9, 3136). Sodium methoxide (40.5 g, 0.75 mol) was suspended in dry ether (500 mL) and stirred under nitrogen at 0°C. A mixture of dimethylsuccinate (65.4 mL, 0.5 mol) and methylformate (123 mL, 2 mol) was added dropwise over 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 h and then at room temperature overnight. Subsequently, the reaction mixture was evaporated to a viscous brown residue which was washed once with petroleum ether and then dissolved in 3 M hydrochloric acid (160 mL). This solution was made weakly acidic with concentrated hydrochloric acid and then

extracted with dichloromethane (4x250 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was distilled in a kugelrohr apparatus at 60°C and 0.6 mBar yielding 52.3 g of a mixture of the title compound and dimethyl succinate in the molar ratio 80:20 (determined by NMR) as a colorless oil. The product is purified of the dimethyl succinate by continuous extraction with diethyl ether. Alternatively the mixture can be used directly for the next step.

^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6 , TMS) δ : 3.2 (s, 2H, CH_2), 3.59 (s, 3H, OMe), 3.61 (s, 3H, OMe), 7.73 (s, 1H, CHOH), 10.86 (br s, 1H, CHOH). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d_6 , TMS) ppm: 28.9 (CH_2), 51.0 (OMe), 51.6 (OMe), 102.1 (C=CHOH), 156.6 (CHOH), 168.3 (COO), 171.7 (COO).

EXAMPLE 85

Synthesis of pseudoisocytosine-5-ylacetic acid.

This procedure is a modification of a published method (Beran *et al.*, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.*, 1983, 48, 292). Sodium methoxide (41.9 g, 0.78 mol) was dissolved in dry methanol (200 mL) and guanidine hydrochloride (49.4 g, 0.52 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes under nitrogen at room temperature. A solution of methyl α -formylsuccinate (30 g, 0.17 mol) in dry methanol (100 mL) was added to the mixture. The reaction mixture was refluxed under nitrogen for 3 h and then stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered, and the filtered residue washed once with methanol. The collected filtrate and washing were evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in water (80 mL) and the solution was acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid to pH 4.2. After having been stirred at 0°C the mixture was filtered, the precipitate washed once with water and then freeze-dried leaving 28.29 g (97 %) of the title compound as a white solid.

Anal. Calcd for $\text{C}_6\text{H}_7\text{N}_3\text{O}_3 \cdot 1/2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$: C, 40.45; H, 4.53; N, 23.59. Found: C, 40.13; H, 4.22; N, 23.26. Due to the poor solubility properties of the product it was further characterized as its sodium salt. The title compound (0.42 g, 2.5 mmol) and sodium bicarbonate were dissolved in boiling water (35 mL). The solution was cooled and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in water (6 mL) and ethanol (4 mL) and isopropanol (8 mL) were added. The sodium salt was collected by filtration, washed with absolute ethanol and petroleum ether and dried to yield 0.31 g of the product (65%) as

white crystals.

^1H NMR (D_2O , TMS) δ : 3.10 (s, 2H, CH_2COO), 7.40 (s, 1H, H6). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d_6 , TMS) ppm: 34.8 (CHCOO), 112.0 (C-5), 145.6-146.5 (m, C-2), 155.1 (C-6), 169.4 (C-4), 179.3 (COOH). MS (FAB) m/z (%): 192 (100, M+H).

5 EXAMPLE 86

Synthesis of methyl pseudoisocytosin-5-yl acetate.

Thionylchloride (3.6 mL, 50 mmol) was added to stirred methanol (210 mL) at -40°C under nitrogen. Pseudoisocytosin-5-ylacetic acid (7 g, 41 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour at 60°C , and overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (80 mL) giving a foamy precipitate. 4 M Hydrochloric acid was added (solution pH 6.5) and the suspension was stirred for 1 h. The precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with water, recrystallized from water and freeze-dried yielding 4.66 g (62%) of methyl isocytosin-5-ylacetate as white crystals.

^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6 , TMS) δ : 3.28 (s, 2H, CH_2COO), 3.64 (s, 3H, COOMe), 6.87 (br s, 2H, NH_2), 7.54 (s, 1H, H-6). ^{13}C NMR (DMSO-d_6 , TMS) ppm: 32.0 (CH_2COO), 51.5 (COOMe), 108.4 (C-5), 153.3 (C-2), 156.4 (C-6), 164.0 (C-4), 171.8 (CH_2COO). MS (FAB+) m/z (%): 184 (100, M+H). *Anal.* Calcd for $\text{C}_7\text{H}_9\text{N}_3\text{O}_3 \cdot 3/2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$: C, 40.00; H, 5.75; N, 19.99. Found: C, 40.18; H, 5.46; N, 20.30.

20 EXAMPLE 87

Synthesis of methyl N^2 -(benzyloxycarbonyl)pseudoisocytosin-5-yl acetate.

Methyl pseudoisocytosin-5-ylacetate (9.5 g, 52 mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (95 mL) and the solution was stirred at 0°C under nitrogen. N-benzyloxycarbonyl- N^2 -methylimidazolium triflate (37.99 g, 104 mmol) was added slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C and then overnight at room temperature. Dichloromethane (800 mL) was added and the resultant mixture was washed with half-saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x400 mL), half-saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulfate (2x400 mL) and brine (1x400 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from methanol affording 13.32 g (81 %) of the title compound as white crystals.

- ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, TMS) δ: 3.43 (s, 2H, CH₂COO), 3.67 (s, 3H, COOMe), 5.30 (s, 2H, PhCH₂), 7.43-7.52 (m, 5H, PhCH₂), 7.77 (s, 1H, H-6). ¹³C NMR (DMSO-d₆, TMS) ppm: 31.9 (CH₂COO), 51.6 (COOMe), 67.0 (PhCH)₂, 128.1-128.5 (m, PhCH)₂, 135.7 (PhCH₂), 150.7 (Z-CO), 170.8 (COO). MS (FAB+) m/z (%): 318 (3.5, M+H). *Anal.*
- 5 Calcd for C₁₅H₁₅N₃O₅: C, 56.78; H, 4.76; N, 13.24. Found: C, 56.68; H, 4.79; N, 13.28.

EXAMPLE 88

Synthesis of N²-(benzyloxycarbonyl)pseudoisocytosin-5-yl acetic acid.

- Methyl N²-(benzyloxycarbonyl)pseudoisocytosin-5-yl acetate (5.2 g, 16 mmol) was suspended in THF (52 ml) and cooled to 0°C. 1 M lithium hydroxide (49 mL, 49 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 25 minutes. Additional 1 M lithium hydroxide (20 mL, 20 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 0°C for 90 minutes. The product was precipitated by acidifying to pH 2 with 1 M hydrochloric acid, collected by filtration, washed once with water and dried. The yield was 4.12 g (83 %) as white crystals.

- 15 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆, TMS) δ: 3.33 (s, 2H, CH₂COO), 5.29 (s, 2H, PhCH₂), 7.43-7.52 (m, 5H, PhCH₂), 7.74 (s, 1H, H-6), 11.82 (br s, 3H, exchangeable protons). MS (FAB+) m/z (%): 304 (12, M+H). *Anal.* calcd. for C₁₄H₁₃N₃O₅: C, 55.45; H, 4.32; N, 13.86. Found: C, 55.55; H, 4.46; N, 13.84.

EXAMPLE 89

- 20 **Preparation of pseudoisocytosine attached to an aminoethyl lysine backbone**

N²-(benzyloxycarbonyl)pseudoisocytosin-5-ylacetic acid was attached to N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-lysine-(2-chlorobenzyloxy) allyl ester (**18**) as per the procedure of Example 79. The resulting monomeric compound is treated as per the procedure of Example 80 to give the deprotected compound ready for use in oligomer synthesis.

- 25 **EXAMPLE 90**

Synthesis of PNA Oligomer Having a Pseudoisocytosine Attached To an Aminoethyl-lysine Backbone.

Aminoethyl-lysine pseudoisocytosine monomer was incorporated into PNAs using the procedure of Example 81.

EXAMPLE 91**Preparation of PNA Monomers Having Adenine, Guanine, Cytosine, and Thymine Attached To an Aminoethyl-lysine Backbone.**

a) Preparation of the guanine monomer: To N6-benzyl-9-carboxymethylene-guanine (2.63 g, 8.78 mmol) was added DIEA (2.6 mL, 20 mmol), DMF (30 mL), dichloromethane (70 mL), and N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-lysine-(2-chlorobenzyloxy) allyl ester (**18**, 3.7 g, 8.04 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under nitrogen for 20 minutes. PyBrop (4 g, 8.58 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for an additional 16 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using chloroform/ hexanes/methanol (12:7:1, v/v/v) to give 4 g (60%) of the title compound as the allyl ester.

To the allyl ester (4 g, 5.37 mmol) was added THF (100 mL), tetrakis palladium(0) (0.18 g, 0.15 mmol), and morpholine (6.1 mL, 70 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred under nitrogen for 2.5 h and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using chloroform/hexanes/methanol (11:8:1, v/v/v) to give 2.67 g (60%) of the title compound.

b) Preparation of the adenine monomer: The procedure used for the guanine monomer in Example 91(a) above was followed for the synthesis of the adenine monomer using N6-benzyl-9-carboxymethylene-adenine.

c) Preparation of the cytosine monomer: To N-(BOC-aminoethyl)-lysine-(2-chlorobenzyloxy) allyl ester (**18**, 8.21 g, 17.7 mmol), added triethylamine (10 mL, 98 mmol) and dichloromethane (200 mL). The solution was cooled to about 0°C in an ice bath under nitrogen. To the cooled solution was added chloroacetyl chloride (2.2 mL, 27.6 mmol) over 10 minutes and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate/ hexanes (1:1, v/v) to give 6.54 g (68%) of the N-acetylated lysine backbone.

Cytosine is protected at the N-4 position by treatment with benzyl chloroformate in pyridine at 0°C to give N4-benzyl-cytosine.

To N⁴-benzyl-cytosine (1.31 g, 5.34 mmol) was added DMF (200 mL), and 60% NaH in mineral oil (0.22 g, 5.4 mmol) and the resulting mixture was stirred under nitrogen for 30 minutes. To the resulting mixture was added the N-acetylated lysine backbone (2.9

g, 5.34 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) and the mixture stirred for 16 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue dissolved in dichloromethane (250 mL). The dichloromethane phase was washed with water (200 mL) and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using dichloromethane:hexanes: methanol (8:2:1) to give 2.4 g (85%) of the cytosine attached to the aminoethyl-lysine backbone as the allyl ester.

The allyl ester is converted to the active monomer by deprotection using palladium following the procedure used in Example 91(a) above to give 1.05 g (46%) of the title compound.

Also see Examples 84-89.

d) Preparation of the thymine monomer: The thymine monomer was prepared following the procedure of Example 91(c) above.

EXAMPLE 92

Thermal Stability of PNA Duplexes.

Duplex-forming PNAs were synthesized as described in Example 83. PNA having the sequence H-GTxA-GATx-CAC-Tx-R (SEQ ID NO:32, wherein Tx represents a thymine monomer bearing an amino acid side chain) was allowed to hybridize with complementary DNA having the sequence 5'-AGT-GAT-CTA-C-3' (SEQ ID NO:33) and complementary PNA having the sequence H-AGT-GAT-CTA-C-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:34), and the thermal stabilities (T_m) of the duplexes were determined in 10 mM phosphate, 100 mM NaCl and 1 mM EDTA at a pH of 7. The results are shown in the table below.

X[#]	C-Terminal	Anti-parallel DNA T_m (°C)	Anti-Parallel PNA T_m (°C)	Parallel DNA T_m (°C)
Glycine	a [#]	52	68	38
Glycine	b [#]	49	67	38
L-Lysine	a	52	64	41
D-Lysine	a	55	N/D	40
L-Serine	a	45	62	37

- 98 -

5	D-Serine	a	50	64	38
	L-Glutamic Acid	b	NC	N/D	NC
	D-Glutamic Acid	b	42	60	-28
	L-Aspartic Acid	b	39	N/D	33
	L-Isoleucine	a	40	53	NC

NC = non-cooperative (no duplex formation occurred)

10 N/D = not determined

*The backbone at the Tx position bears the indicated amino acid side chain.

#In PNA of SEQ ID NO:32, a indicates that R = NH₂; and b indicates that R = LysNH₂.

15 The results show that the glycine in the backbone can be replaced by other amino acids for a moderate loss in hybridization potency. Upon comparing D-lysine versus L-lysine and D-serine versus L-serine, it is evident that D-amino acids are better accommodated in the backbone of PNAs. Furthermore, the introduction of a negatively-charged side chain in the PNA backbone (*e.g.* glutamic acid and aspartic acid) decreases hybridization potency as indicated by a decreased T_m , whereas a positively-charged side chain (*e.g.* lysine) increases the hybridization potency as indicated by a higher T_m . Also, the PNAs bound better to antiparallel DNA than to parallel DNA.

20

EXAMPLE 93

Thermal Stabilities of Singly Mismatched PNA:DNA Duplexes.

25 The sequence specificity of PNAs containing amino acid side chains in the backbone was studied by determining the effect of a single base pair mismatch ($T_{PNA-G_{DNA}}$) in the complementary DNA strand. PNAs having the sequence H-GTxA-GATx-CAC-Tx-R (SEQ ID NO:32) were used for this study. The singly mismatched complementary DNA had the sequence 5'-AGT-GGT-CTA-C-3' (SEQ ID NO:35) with the mismatched base

- 99 -

underlined. The results are shown in the table below.

X*	C-Terminal [#]	T _m (°C)
Glycine	a	42
L-Lysine	a	33
D-Lysine	a	38
D-Glutamic Acid	b	28
L-Isoleucine	a	26

The backbone at the Tx position bears the indicated amino acid side chain.

- 10 [#]In PNA of SEQ ID NO:32, a indicates that R = NH₂; and b indicates that R = LysNH₂.

The results indicate that PNAs containing amino acid side chains in the backbone exhibit enhanced sequence specificity for complementary DNA as they discriminate better against base mismatches than the PNA with a glycine in the backbone.

15 EXAMPLE 94

In Vitro Evaluation of PNAs Targeted to HCV.

HCV replication in cell culture has not yet been achieved. Consequently, *in vitro* translation assays are used as standard assays to evaluate test compounds for their anti-HCV activity. One such standard *in vitro* translation assay was used to evaluate PNAs of the present invention for their ability to inhibit synthesis of HCV protein in a rabbit reticulocyte assay.

Plasmids containing full-length cDNA sequence for the desired portion of the HCV mRNA was prepared. A T7 promoter was introduced into the plasmid immediately adjacent to the 5'-cap site. A similar strategy was used for maintaining a control in which a cDNA plasmid containing coding sequences for a truncated intercellular adhesion molecule type I was modified. As a result of a deletion at base 554 relative to the ICAM-1 AUG, a frameshift occurs with a stop codon generated at base 679. The resulting open reading frame encodes a truncated ICAM-1 polypeptide with a lower molecular weight.

Uncapped transcripts for *in vitro* translation were prepared by T7 transcription of the plasmid using the Megascript transcription kit (Ambion, Inc.) according to the

- 100 -

instructions provided by the manufacturer. The plasmid was linearized by restriction endonuclease digestion at a site in the linker region of the plasmid immediately downstream of the 3'-untranslated sequences of the cDNA insert in order to generate a transcript nearly identical in sequence to authentic mRNA. Following transcription, free nucleotides were removed using G-50 Quickspin columns (Boehringer-Mannheim) and the amount of transcript present was quantitated by optical density.

In vitro translation reactions contained 300 ng of the HCV transcript (final concentration of 10 nM), 7 μ L of rabbit reticulocyte lysate (RRL, Promega), 8.8 μ Ci of [35 S]-methionine (1175 Ci/mmol, Amersham), 13 μ M IVT amino acids mix devoid of methionine (Promega), 8 units of RNasin (Promega) and PNAs in a total volume of 15 μ L. A similar control reaction contained 100 ng (30 nM) of the truncated ICAM-1 transcript instead of the HCV transcript. The target and control RNA were heated at 65°C for 5 minutes, incubated at 37°C for 15 minutes and then mixed with lysate components. The translation mix was incubated at 37°C for 60 minutes and the reaction was terminated by the addition of 2x Laemmli gel loading buffer. After boiling, proteins were fractionated on precast 14% acrylamide gels (Novex, San Diego), fixed in 10% propanol, 5% acetic acid, 3% glycerol, dried and analyzed with a PhosphorImager.

PNAs effectively blocked *in vitro* translation of HCV protein. PNAs that were evaluated in an *in vitro* translation assay are shown in the table below (Dk and Tk are 2,6-diaminopurine and thymine, respectively, attached to an aminoethyl-lysine backbone).

ISIS #	SEQ ID NO:	SEQUENCE
13642	1	TTT-CGC-CDkC-CCDk
13414	6	TkTkTk-AGG-ATkTk-CGTk-GCTk-C
13639	7	TkCG-TkGC-TkCA-TkGG
265-12	36	TTT-CGC-GAC-CCA
11908	37	TCG-TGC-TCA-TGG
8215	38	Gly-TTT-AGG-ATT-CGT-GCT-CAT-GG-LysNH ₂

Results of the *in vitro* translation assay are shown in Figure 8. It is observed that 13642 (which is a 12-mer PNA containing two 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases bearing

- 101 -

lysine side chains) with an EC_{50} of approximately 29 nM is more effective at blocking *in vitro* translation of HCV protein than 265-12 (which is devoid of lysine side chains) with an EC_{50} of approximately 57 nM. Further, upon comparing 11908 and 13639, at a concentration as low as 30 nM, it is evident that the PNA with lysine side chains (*i.e.* 13639) is more effective at blocking *in vitro* translation of HCV protein than 11908, which does not contain any lysine side chains. This clearly indicates that the presence of a side chain in PNA enhances its ability to block *in vitro* translation of HCV protein.

EXAMPLE 95

PNAs With Increased Solubility.

PNAs may contain purine as well as pyrimidine nucleobases. However, as the purine nucleobase content of a PNA increases, the PNA becomes increasingly insoluble, to the extent that PNAs containing a high purine content may be rendered insoluble. Surprisingly, PNAs containing side chains of lysine showed unexpected properties in that they exhibited increased solubility when compared to PNAs devoid of any lysine side chains.

PNA of sequence TGC-GGG-TGA-GTG-GTA-G (SEQ ID NO:39) was synthesized and its solubility was compared to that of a corresponding PNA containing a lysine side chain, *i.e.* TkGC-GGG-TkGA-GTkG-GTkA-G (SEQ ID NO:40), wherein Tk is thymine bearing a lysine side chain. Unexpected results were obtained in that the PNA containing lysine side chains was soluble in physiologically useful solutions and test solvents including N-methylpyrrolidone, DMF and dichloromethane, whereas the PNA devoid of lysine side chains was insoluble. These results indicate that the introduction of lysine side chains into PNAs provide PNAs with improved solubility which would facilitate their further use.

In Examples 96-101, all numbers within parentheses refer to Figure 9.

- 102 -

EXAMPLE 96**N α -Fmoc- π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (32)**

To N α -Fmoc- π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine (Sigma Chemical Company, 9.0 gm, 18.1 mmol) in DMF (150 mL) was added (trimethylsilyl)diazomethane (20 mL, 40 mmol/2.0 M/THF). The mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen for about 12 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give the title compound (32) as an oil. The oil was used as is for the next step without further purification.

EXAMPLE 97 **π -Benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (33)**

To N α -Fmoc- π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (32)(how much) in dichloromethane (100 mL) was added Piperidine (2.0 mL, 20 mmol). The mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen for 3 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with methanol (50 mL) and the pH was adjusted to 7.0 with HCl. Filtration yielded the title compound (33) as an oil. The oil was used as is for the next step without further purification.

EXAMPLE 98 **π -Benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (34)**

To π -Benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (33) in methanol (200 mL) was added sodium cyanoborohydride (5.65 gm, 90 mmol). The pH of the mixture was adjusted to between 5 and 6 using acetic acid. Boc-aminoacetaldehyde (5.54 gm, 35.0 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of nitrogen for 1 hour. An additional amount of Boc-aminoacetaldehyde (14.4 gm, 91.3 mmol) in methanol (50 mL) was added with stirring for another 12 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate (500mL) and washed with aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x 200 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and then concentrated under reduced pressure to give a residue. The oil was further purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate/methanol/hexanes (5:1:5) as the eluent to give 5.33g (68%) of the title compound as an oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.718 (6x, 1H, NH), 2.55 (m, 2H), 2.71 (m,

- 103 -

2H), 2.99 (m, 2H), 3.11 (m, 2H), 3.53 (t, 1H), 3.68 (s, 3H), 4.42 (s, 2H), 4.80 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.33 (s, 2H), 6.88 (s, 1H), 7.31 (m, 5H) and 7.48 (s, 1H). MS-FAB in negative mode, (Calc.); Found: (432.5); 431.1.

EXAMPLE 99**5 N α -(N-Boc-2-aminoethyl) π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (35)**

To π -Benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester (34) (5.33 gm, 12.3 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) and dichloromethane (50 mL) was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (3.5 mL, 25 mmol) and thymine-1-yl-acetic acid (1.75 gm, 9.5 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 20 minutes PyBrop (8.85 gm, 19 mmol) was added and the mixture was
10 stirred for an additional 12 hours under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using hexanes/ methanol/ethyl acetate (4:1:5) as the eluent to give 1.5 (20%) of the title compound.

Proton NMR was consistent with structure.

15 EXAMPLE 100**N α -(N-Boc-2-aminoethyl) π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine (36)**

To N α -(N-Boc-2-aminoethyl) π -benzyloxymethyl-L-histidine methyl ester compound (5) (1.5 gm, 2.5 mmol) in methanol (100 mL) was added sodium hydroxide (0.8 gm, 20 mmol). The mixture was allowed to stand for 12 hours and the solvent was
20 removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate/methanol (4:1) as the eluent to give 1.1 g (75%) of the title compound.

Proton NMR was consistent with structure. MS-FAB in negative mode, (Calc.); Found: (584.6); 582.6.

25 EXAMPLE 101**N α -(N-Boc-2-aminoethyl) π -benzyloxymethyl-D-histidine (D-36)**

Following the procedures illustrated in examples 1-5, and starting with N α -Fmoc- π -benzyloxymethyl-D-histidine (Sigma Chemical Company, 9.0 gm, 18.1 mmol) the D isomer was synthesized.

Proton NMR was consistent with structure. MS-FAB in negative mode, (Calc.); Found: (584.6); 582.1.

EXAMPLE 102

Enhanced Stability of Duplex Between PNA Containing 2,6-Diaminopurine and DNA.

Four PNA decamers (H-GTAGATCACT-LysNH₂, H-GTAGDTCACCT-LysNH₂, H-GTDGDTCDCT-LysNH₂ and H-AGTGATCTAC-LysNH₂; D is 2,6-diaminopurine) were synthesized according to procedures described above. The PNA decamers were allowed to hybridize with complementary DNA and the thermal melting profiles of the PNA:DNA duplexes were measured and compared to control DNA:DNA duplexes and with PNA:DNA duplexes wherein the DNA contains a single T>C mismatch opposite a D residue in the PNA. The results are shown in the table below.

	*DNA-1 (T _m in °C)	*DNA-2 (T _m in °C)	*PNA-1 (T _m in °C)
PNA-2 H-GTAGATCACT-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:1)	51	~33	68
PNA-3 H-GTAGDTCACCT-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:2)	56	32.5	71.5
PNA-4 H-GTDGDTCDCT-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:3)	67	55.5	81
DNA-3 5'-dGTAGATCACT-3' (SEQ ID NO:4)	33.5	**ND	49
DNA-4 5'-dGTAGDTCACCT-3' (SEQ ID NO:5)	36	28	57

- 105 -

DNA-5 5'-dGTDGDTCDCT-3' (SEQ ID NO:6)	44	34.5	61
---	----	------	----

5

* DNA-1 is 5'-dAGTGATCTAC-3' (SEQ ID NO:7)
DNA-2 is 5'-dAGTGACCTAC-3' (SEQ ID NO:8)
PNA-1 is H-AGTGATCTAC-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:9)

** ND = Not Determined

The presence of 2,6-diaminopurine increased the T_m by 4-5°C in PNA:DNA duplexes whereas the increase in DNA:DNA duplexes was only 3-4 °C. This difference may reflect increased stacking in the former duplex. This tendency is also observed when unmodified homoduplexes of PNA:PNA and DNA:DNA are compared to duplexes having three D:T base pairs, resulting in T_m increases of 12 °C and 10.5 °C, respectively. Upon comparison of the binding of PNA-3 to DNA-1 and DNA-2, a decrease in T_m of 23.5 °C is observed when a D:C mismatch is introduced into a PNA:DNA duplex containing only one 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase, whereas a decrease in T_m of only 18 °C is observed in case of PNA-2 which does not contain any 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases. The increased specificity in terms of a decrease in the melting temperature (T_m) of the duplex was not observed when additional D:T basepairs were introduced. This finding reflects the increased stability of the duplex containing more than a single 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase indicating that the more stable duplex is better able to accomodate the mismatch-induced structural change in the duplex.

EXAMPLE 103

Binding of PNA Containing 2,6-Diaminopurine to DNA.

A PNA decamer containing six 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases was allowed to hybridize to complementary DNA. The thermal stability of this duplex was determined and compared to thermal stability of a duplex formed between DNA and a PNA decamer devoid of 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases. The T_m results are shown in the table below.

	*DNA-6 (T_m in °C)	*DNA-7 (T_m in °C)
--	---------------------------------	---------------------------------

- 106 -

	PNA-5 H-AAAAGGAGAG-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:10)	71	50
5	PNA-6 H-DDDDGGDGDG-LysNH₂ (SEQ ID NO:11)	≥85	71

* DNA-6 is 5'-CTCTCCTTTT-3' (SEQ ID NO:12)

DNA-7 is 5'-TTTTCCTCTC-3' (SEQ ID NO:13)

10 Incorporation of 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases into PNA increases thermal stability (represented by the T_m) of the duplex between DNA and the PNA containing a 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase to 85 °C when compared with the thermal stability ($T_m = 71$ °C) of the duplex between DNA and a PNA devoid of 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobases.

15 Those skilled in the art will appreciate that numerous changes and modifications may be made to the preferred embodiments of the present invention and that such changes and modifications may be made without departing from the spirit of the invention. It is therefore intended that the appended claims cover all such equivalent variations as fall within the true spirit and scope of the invention.

- 107 -

SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

- (i) APPLICANTS: NIELSEN, Peter E. et al.
- (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Peptide Nucleic Acids Having Enhanced Binding Affinity, Sequence Specificity and Solubility
- (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 53
- (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
 - (A) ADDRESSEE: Woodcock Washburn Kurtz Mackiewicz and Norris
 - (B) STREET: One Liberty Place - 46th Floor
 - (C) CITY: Philadelphia
 - (D) STATE: PA
 - (E) COUNTRY: U.S.A.
 - (F) ZIP: 19103
- (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
 - (A) MEDIUM TYPE: 3.5 inch disk, 1.44 Mb
 - (B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
 - (C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
 - (D) SOFTWARE: WordPerfect 6.1
- (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: N/A
 - (B) FILING DATE: July 24, 1997
 - (C) CLASSIFICATION: N/A
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/685,484
 - (B) FILING DATE: 24-JUL-1996
 - (C) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/686,116
 - (D) FILING DATE: 24-JUL-1996
 - (E) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/686,113
 - (F) FILING DATE: 24-JUL-1996
 - (G) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/686,114
 - (H) FILING DATE: 24-JUL-1996
 - (I) APPLICATION NUMBER: (NOT YET ASSIGNED)
 - (J) FILING DATE: 29-MAY-1997
- (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
 - (A) NAME: Michael P. Straher
 - (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 38,325
 - (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: ISIS-2513
- (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) TELEPHONE: 215-568-3100
 - (B) TELEFAX: 215-568-3439

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 12 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: 2,6-diaminopurine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

- 108 -

TTTCGCGNCC CN 12

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 8 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: 2,6-diaminopurine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: 2,6-diaminopurine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 5
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: 2,6-diaminopurine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

GCNNNCGC 8

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 14 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 5
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

CGCTTGGCAG TCTC 14

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 14 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

- 109 -

- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 5
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

CGCTTGGCAG TCTC 14

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 14 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4

- 110 -

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 5

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 7

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 8

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 10

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 11

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 12

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 13

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 14

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

CGCTTGGCAG TCTC

14

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 16 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 1

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 2

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

- 111 -

- (B) LOCATION: 3
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 9
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

TTTAGGATTC GTGCTC 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 12 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

TCGTGCTCAT GG 12

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 8 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:

- 112 -

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 4
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 5
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

GCGTTTGC 8

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 16 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 16
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

CGCTGCAGAT GCGGTT 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 9
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

- 113 -

- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 16
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

CCGCCGGCTC AGTCTT 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 16 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

CATCGTGGCG GTTAGG 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10

- 114 -

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 13

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

TCGGGTGAGT GGTAG 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 16 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 4

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 8

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 14

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 16

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

CACTCAGTGC AACTCT 16

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 16 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 3

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 8

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 15

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

- 115 -

CCTCCACTCC CGCCTC 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 16 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 9
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

CATCGTGGCG GTTAGG 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 16 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 4
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:

- 116 -

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 14
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 16
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

CACTCAGTGC AACTCT 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 16 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

CCTCCACTCC CGCCTC 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 20 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 16
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: cytosine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

- 117 -

CAGCCATGGT TCCCCCAAC 20

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

GTGAGGGTCT CTCTC 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:
- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated with fluorescent dye
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12

- 118 -

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

GTGAGGGTCT CTCTC 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 1
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 5
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 8
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 9
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 11
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

CAAATGGTTC TCGAA 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 1
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated to fluorescent dye

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 5
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 8
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 9

- 119 -

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 11

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

CAAATGGTTC TCGAA 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 15 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 1

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 5

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 7

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 9

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 11

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

ACCTGAGGGA GCCAG 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 15 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 1

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated to fluorescent dye

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 5

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 7

- 120 -

- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 9
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

ACCTGAGGGA GCCAG 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

TTGGCCACGT CCTGA 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:26:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated to fluorescent dye
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1

- 121 -

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 2

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 10

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 13

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:26:

TTGGCCACGT CCTGA 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:27:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 15 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 1

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 2

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 7

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 8

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 14

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:27:

TGCCCCGGGAA AACGT 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:28:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 15 bases

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site

(B) LOCATION: 1

- 122 -

- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated to fluorescent dye
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 8
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 14
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: guanine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:28:

TGCCCGGGAA AACGT 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:29:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:29:

CCTCGTGCAC GTTCT 15

- 123 -

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:30:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: conjugated to fluorescent dye
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 3
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 12
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 13
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:30:

CCTCGTGCAC GTTCT 15

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:31:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 15 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: fluorescein conjugated
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 5
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:

- 124 -

- (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
- (B) LOCATION: 13
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 15
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:31:

TGGATGTCGA CCTCT 15

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:32:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 2
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine comprises amino acid side chain
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 6
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine comprises amino acid side chain
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 10
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine comprises amino acid side chain
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:32:

GTAGATCACT 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:33:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:33:

AGTGATCTAC 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:34:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 11 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: lysine residue
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:34:

AGTGATCTAC N 11

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:35:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases

- 125 -

- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:35:
AGTGGTCTAC 10
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:36:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 12 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:36:
TTTCGCGACC CA 12
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:37:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 12 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:37:
TCGTGCTCAT GG 12
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:38:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 22 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(ix) FEATURE:
(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
(B) LOCATION: 1
(D) OTHER INFORMATION: glycine residue
(ix) FEATURE:
(A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
(B) LOCATION: 22
(D) OTHER INFORMATION: lysine residue
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:38:
NTTTAGGATT CGTGCTCATG GN 22
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:39:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 16 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:39:
TGCGGGTGAG TGGTAG 16
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:40:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 16 bases
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

- 126 -

- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 1
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 7
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 14
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: thymine attached to aminoethyl-lysine backbone
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:40:

TGCGGGTGAG TGGTAG 16

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:41:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 11 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: Modified-site
 - (B) LOCATION: 11
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: lysine residue
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:41:

TTTTCCTCTC N 11

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:42:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:42:

AAAAGGAGAG 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:43:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:43:

GAGAGGAAAA 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:44:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases

- 127 -

- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:44:

AAAAGTAGAG 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:45:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:45:

AAAAGGTGAG 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:46:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:46:

GAGATGAAAA 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:47:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:47:

GAGTGAAAA 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:48:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:48:

AAAAAAAAAA 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:49:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
 - (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:49:

AAAAAGAAAA 10

- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:50:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 10 bases

- 128 -

- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:50:

AAAAATAAAA 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:51:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:51:

AAAAGAAAAA 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:52:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:52:

AAAACAAAAA 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:53:

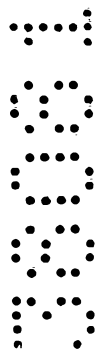
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 bases
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

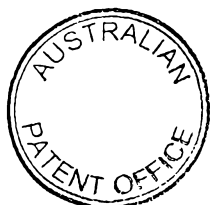
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:53:

AAAAATAAAAA 10

1. A peptide nucleic acid having formula:



AUSTRIA



9. The peptide nucleic acid of claim 1 or claim 2 wherein the carbon atom to which at least one substituent R' is attached is stereochemically enriched.

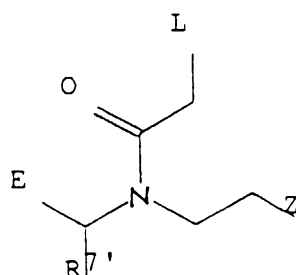
10. The peptide nucleic acid of claim 9 wherein said stereochemical enrichment is of the R-configuration.

11. The peptide nucleic acid of claim 10 wherein substantially all of the groups R' are butylamine.

12. The peptide nucleic acid of claim 1 or claim 2 wherein said peptide nucleic acid is derived from an amino acid.

13. The peptide nucleic acid of claim 12 wherein said peptide nucleic acid is derived from D-lysine.

14. A compound having the formula:



wherein:

L is selected from a group consisting of naturally-occurring nucleobases and non-naturally-occurring nucleobases;

R' is C_1 - C_8 alkylamine, wherein alkyl includes straight chain, branched chain, and cyclic hydrocarbons;

E is COOH or an activated or protected derivative thereof; and

Z is NH_2 or NHPg, wherein Pg is an amine protecting group.

15. The compound of claim 14 wherein at least one of said L is a 2,6-diaminopurine nucleobase.

16. The compound of claim 14 or claim 15 wherein said R' is C_3 - C_6 alkylamine.

17. The compound of claim 16 wherein said R' is C_4 - C_5 alkylamine.

18. The compound of claim 17 wherein said R' is butylamine.

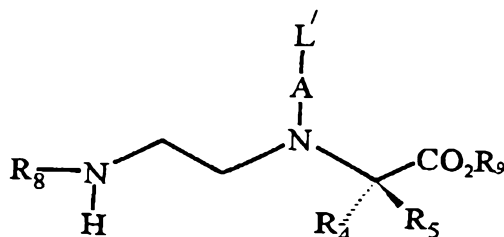
19. The compound of claim 14 or claim 15 wherein Pg is *t*-butoxycarbonyl.

20. The compound of claim 14 or claim 15 wherein the carbon atom to which said R' group is stereochemically enriched.

21. The compound of claim 14 of claim 15 wherein the carbon atom to which said R' group is attached has the R-configuration.

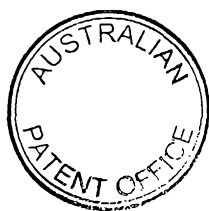
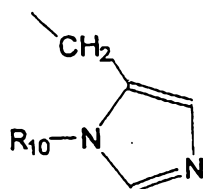


22. The compound of claim 19 wherein said $R^{7'}$ is butyl amine.
23. The compound of claim 14 or claim 15 wherein said compound is derived from an amino acid.
24. The compound of claim 23 wherein said compound is derived from D-lysine.
25. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a peptide nucleic acid according to claim 1 or claim 2 and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, binder, thickener, diluent, buffer, preservative, or surface active agent.
26. A compound having the formula:



wherein:

- R_8 is H or an amine protecting group;
- R_9 is H, alkyl having from 1 to 12 carbon atoms, or alkenyl having from 2 to 12 carbon atoms;
- one or R_4 and R_5 is H and the other of R_4 and R_5 is a moiety of formula:

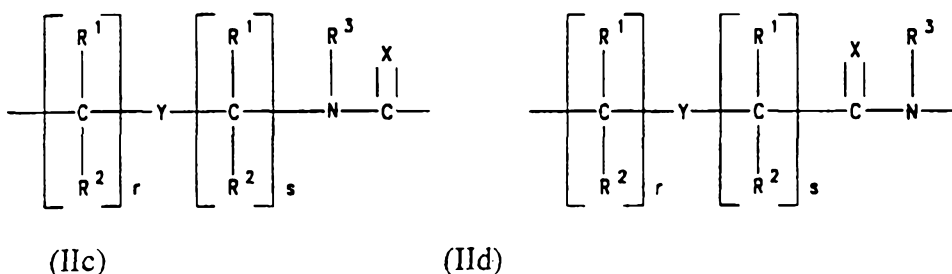
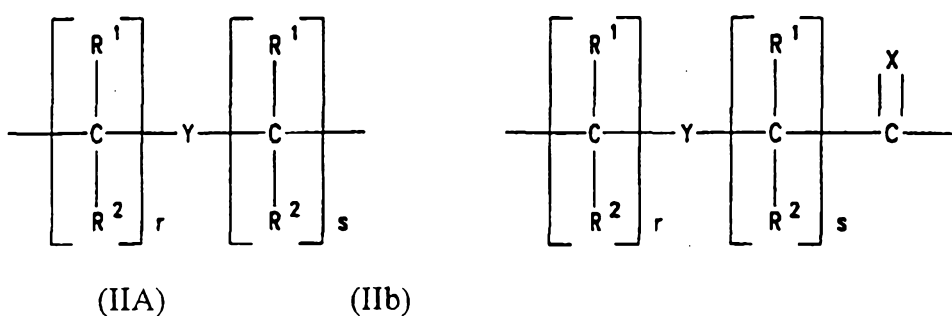


wherein:

R_{10} is an amine protecting group;

L is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxy, (C₁-C₄)alkanoyl, naturally occurring nucleobases, non-naturally occurring nucleobases, aromatic moieties, DNA intercalators, nucleobase-binding groups, and heterocyclic moieties, reporter ligands, wherein amino groups are, optionally, protected by amino protecting groups;

A is a group of formula (IIa)-(IId):



where:

X is O, S, Se, NR³, CH₂ or C(CH₃)₂;

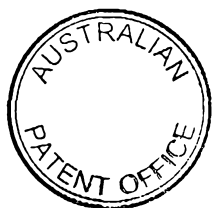
Y is a single bond, O, S or NR⁴ where R⁴ is as described above;

each r and s is zero or an integer from 1 to 5;

each R¹ and R² is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁-C₄)alkyl which may be hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio, amino and halogen; and

R³ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁-C₄)alkyl, hydroxy- or alkoxy- or alkylthio-substituted (C₁-C₄)alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, alkylthio and amino;

wherein alkyl includes straight chain, branched chain, and cyclic hydrocarbons.



27. The compound of claim 26 wherein R_8 is selected from the group consisting of allyloxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, *t*-butyloxycarbonyl, fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl, isonicotinyloxycarbonyl groups.

28. The compound of claim 26 wherein R_9 is alkyl having 1 to 7 carbon atoms.

29. The compound of claim 26 wherein R_{10} is selected from the group consisting of *t*-butyloxycarbonyl, *t*-butyloxymethyl, fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl, 2,4-dinitrophenyl and isonicotinyloxycarbonyl groups.

30. The compound of claim 26 wherein R_{10} is benzyloxymethyl.

31. The compound of claim 1 wherein L is a nucleobase.

32. A method for enhancing the DNA or RNA sequence specificity of a peptide nucleic acid by incorporating a C_1 - C_8 alkylamine side chain in said peptide nucleic acid, said peptide nucleic acid having said alkylamine side chain being a peptide nucleic acid in accordance with any one of claims 1 to 24.

Dated this 27th day of January 2000

Michael Egholm, Rolf H Berg, Peter E.
Nielsen, Dorte Buchardt
Patent attorneys for the applicant:

F B RICE & CO



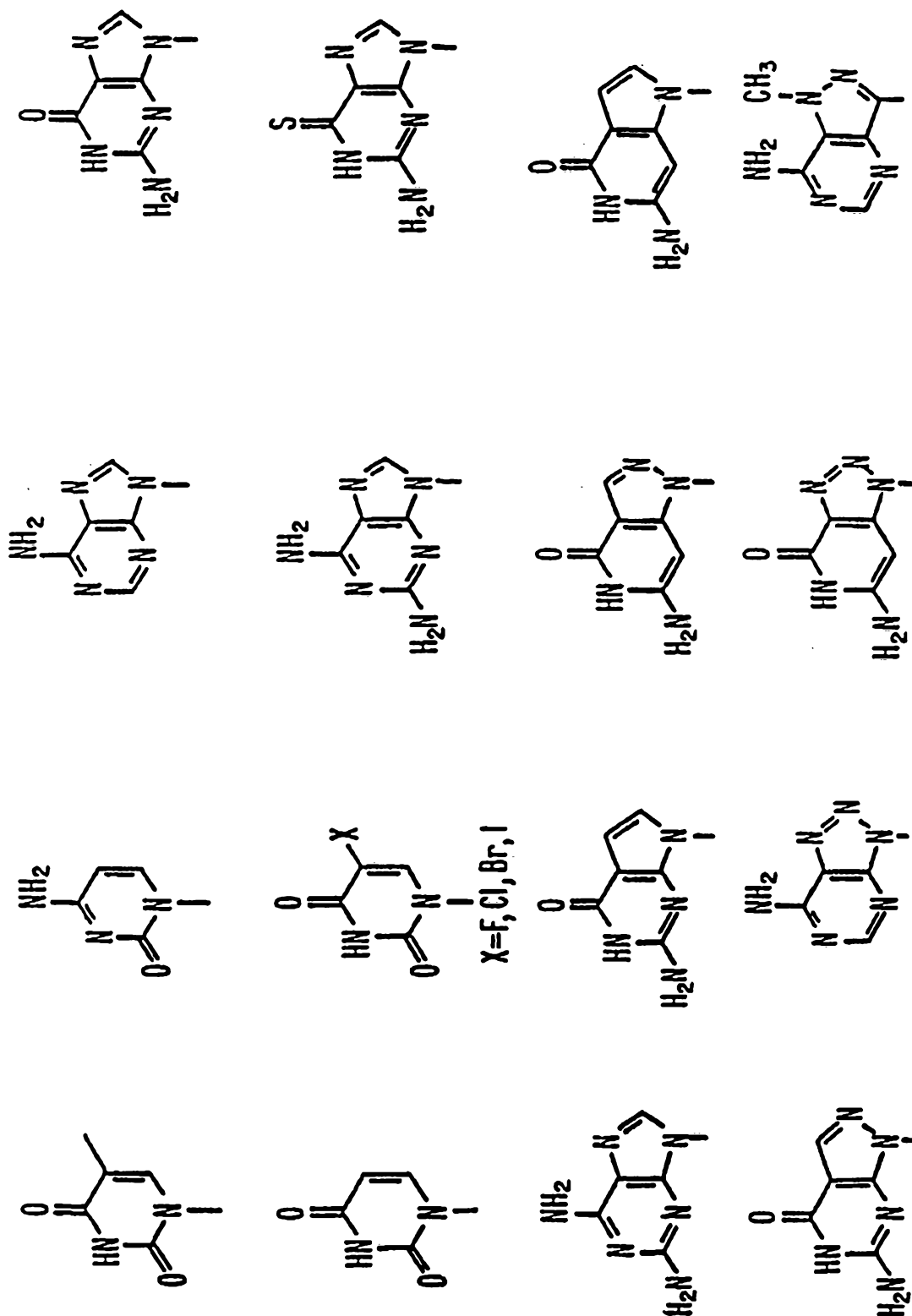


Fig. 1(a)

2/12

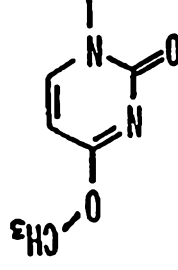
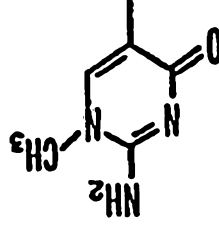
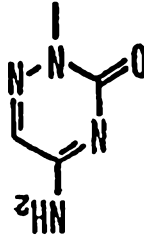
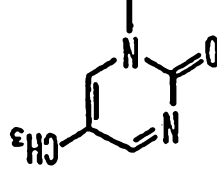
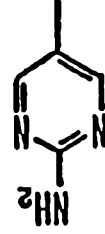
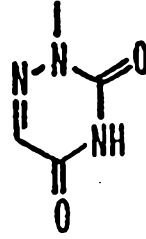
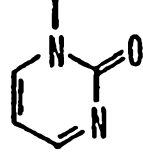
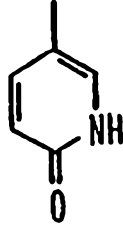
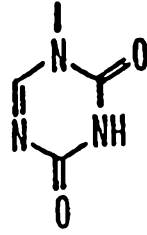
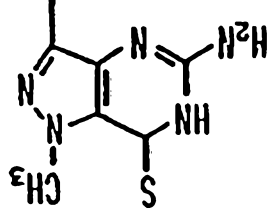
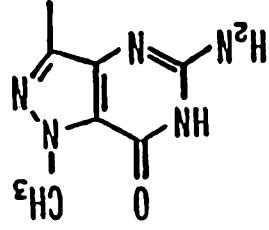
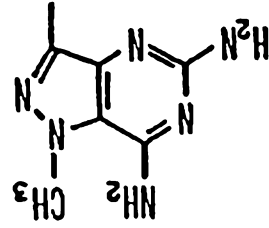
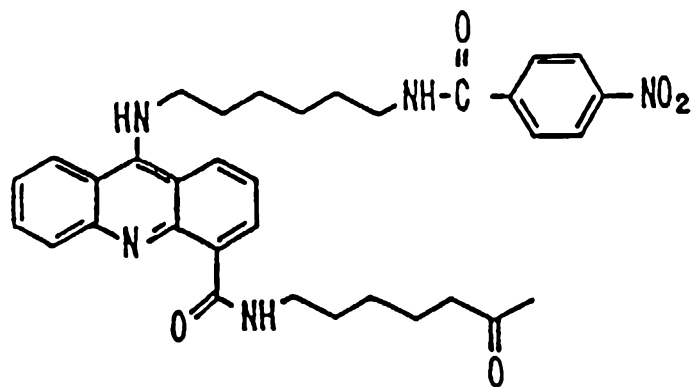
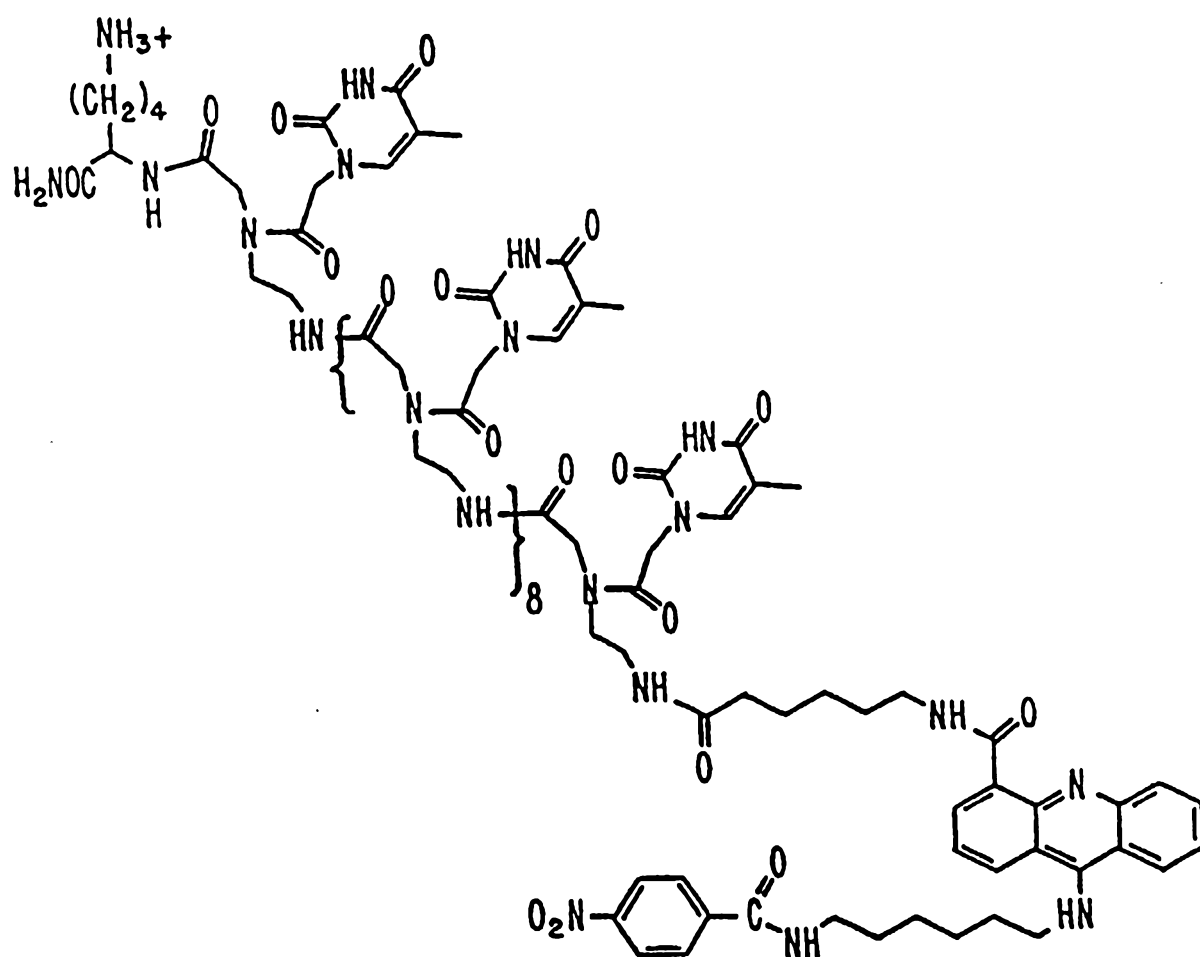
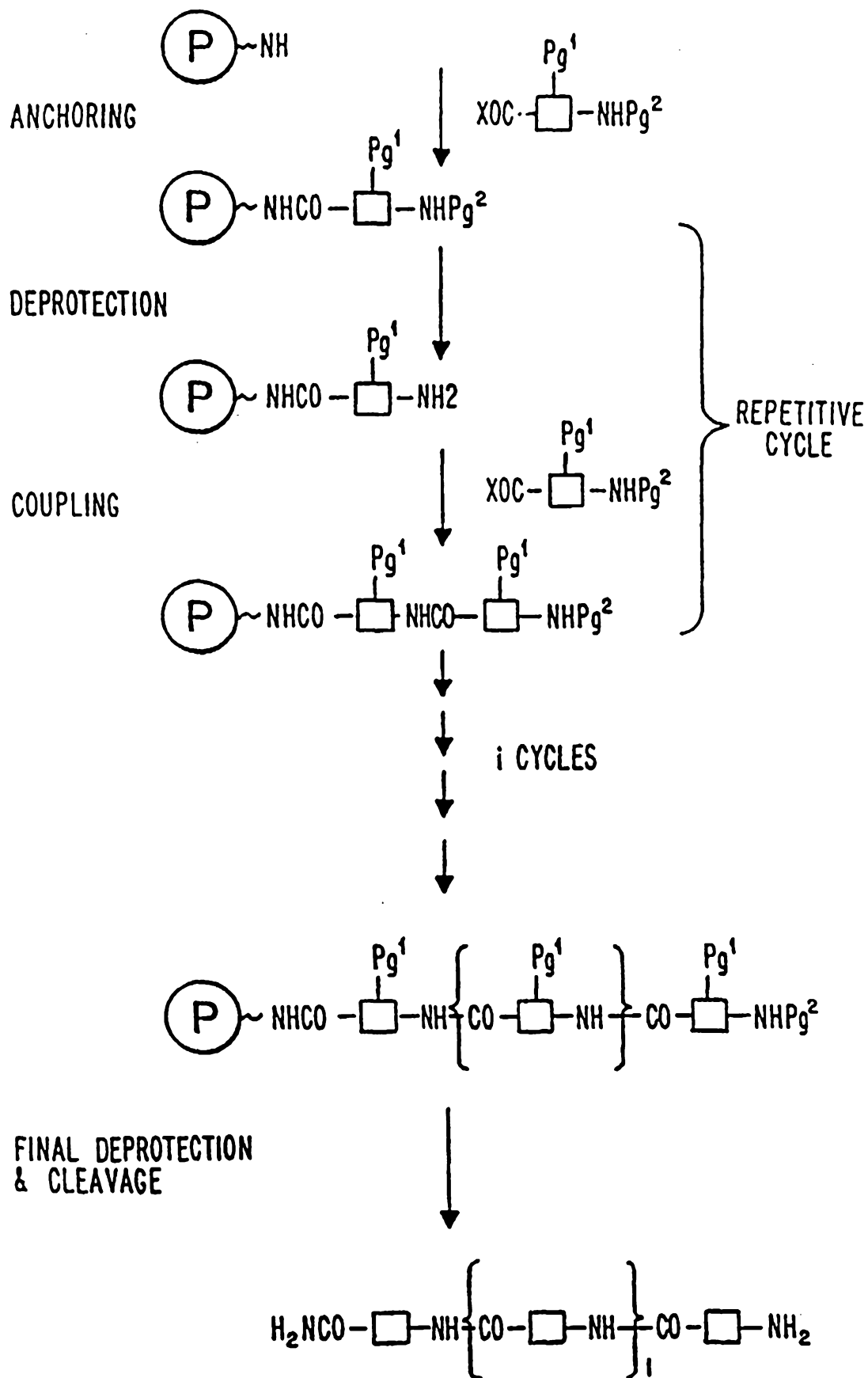


Fig. 1(b)

3/12

Acr¹***Fig. 2***

***Fig. 3***

5/12



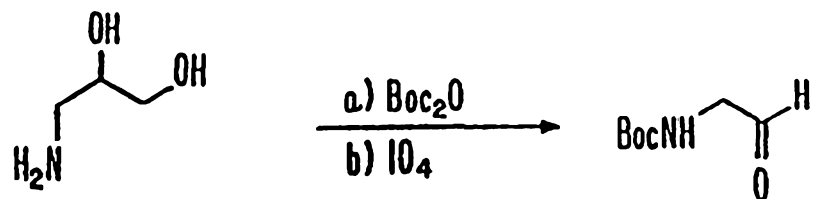
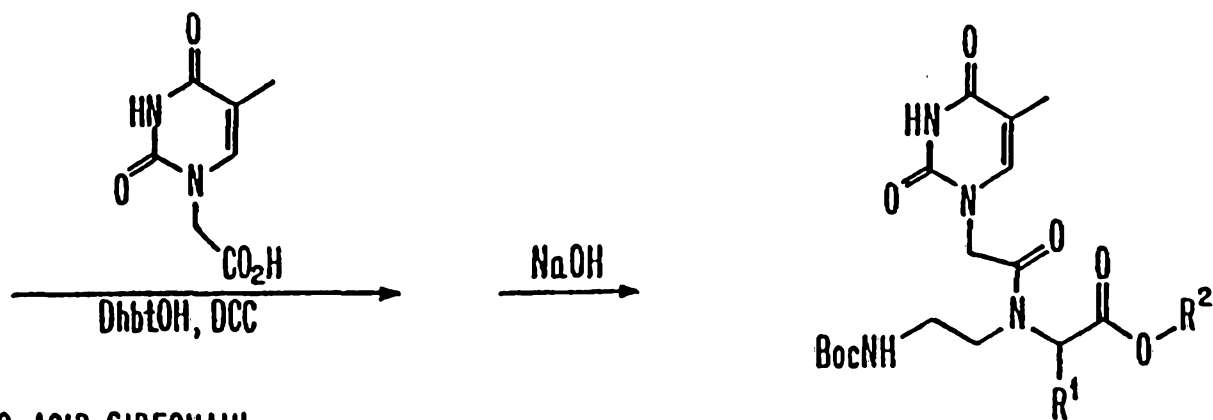
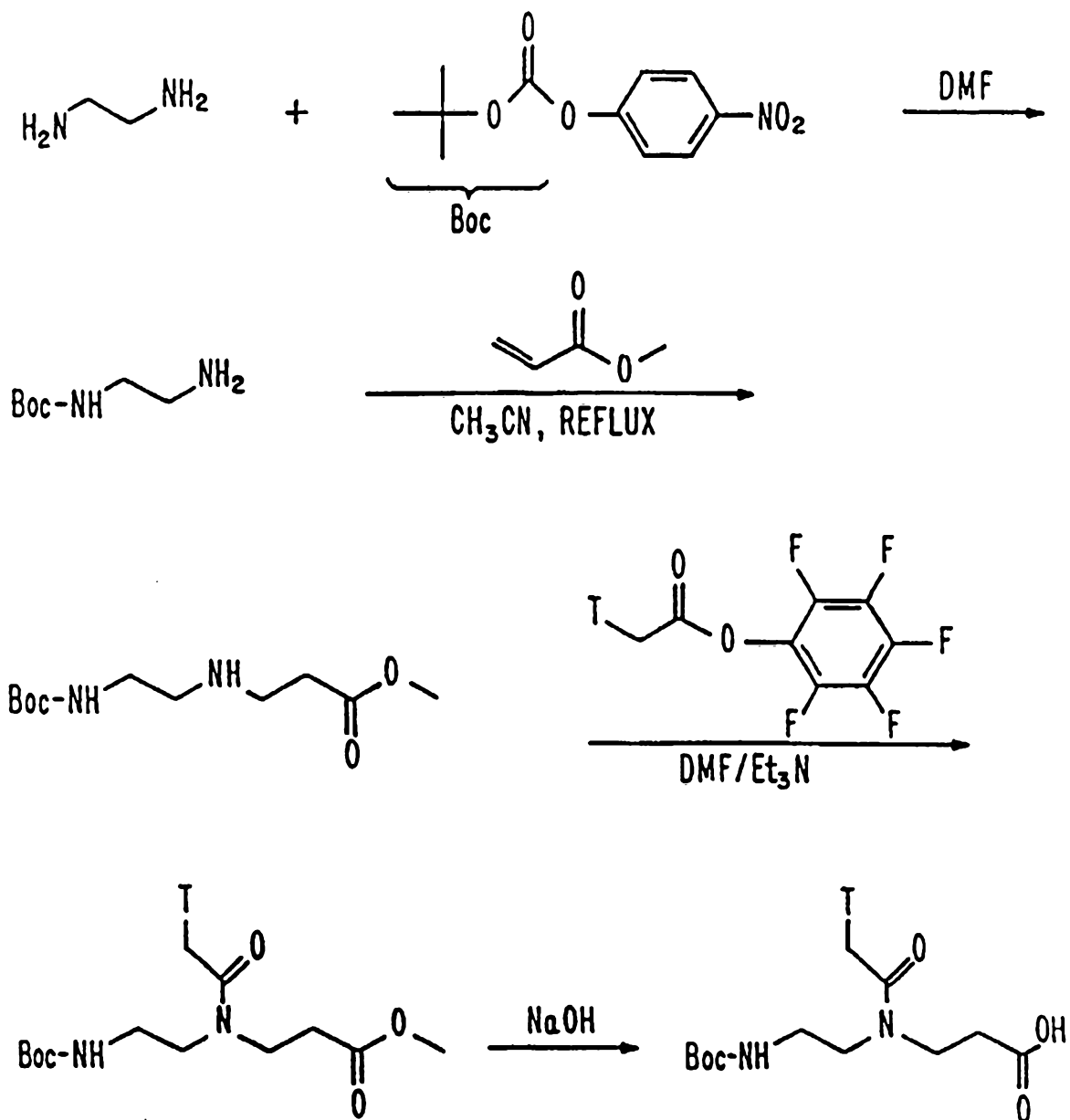


Fig. 5



R^1 = AMINO ACID SIDECHAIN
 R^2 = METHYL, ETHYL ETC.

7/12

***Fig. 6***

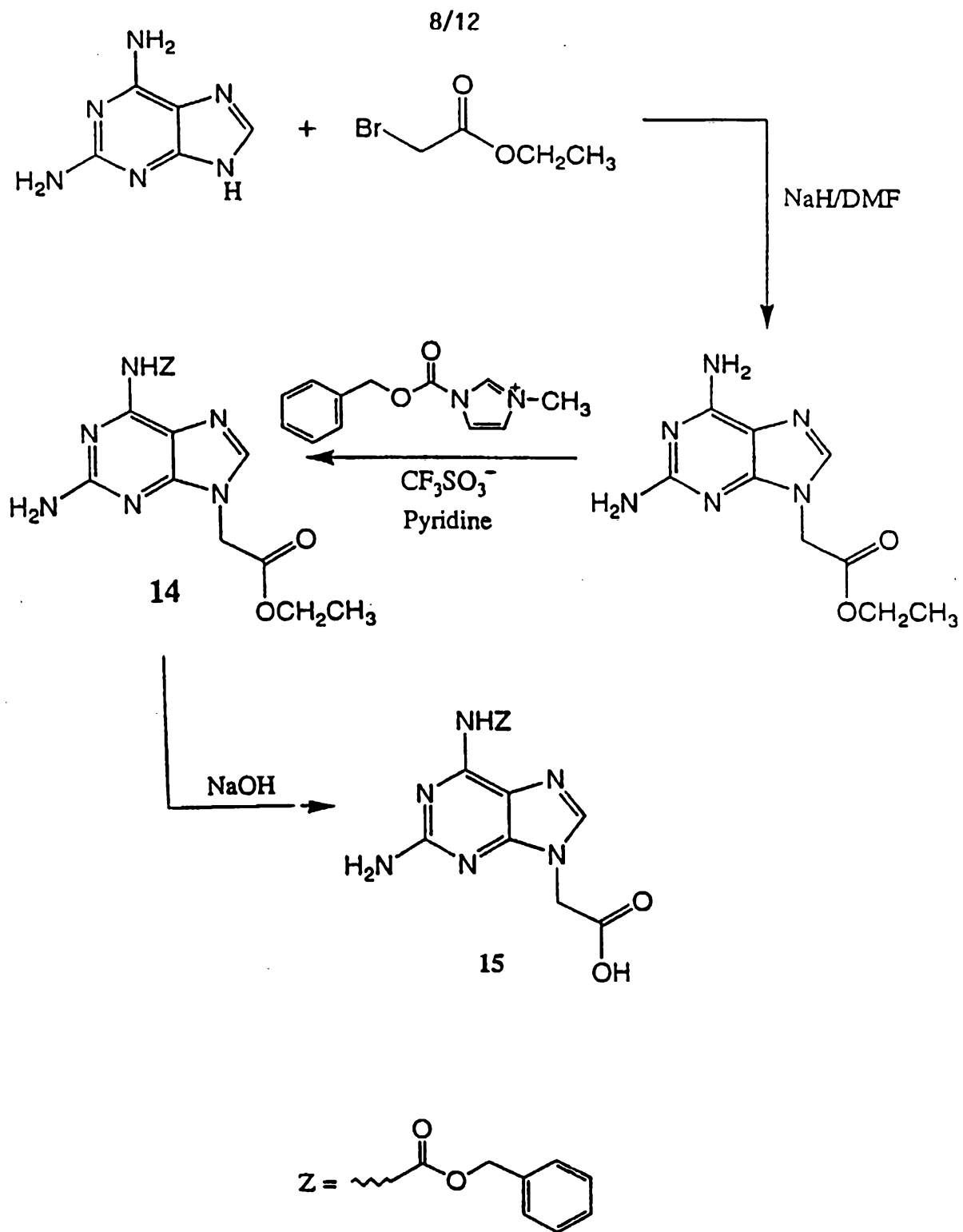
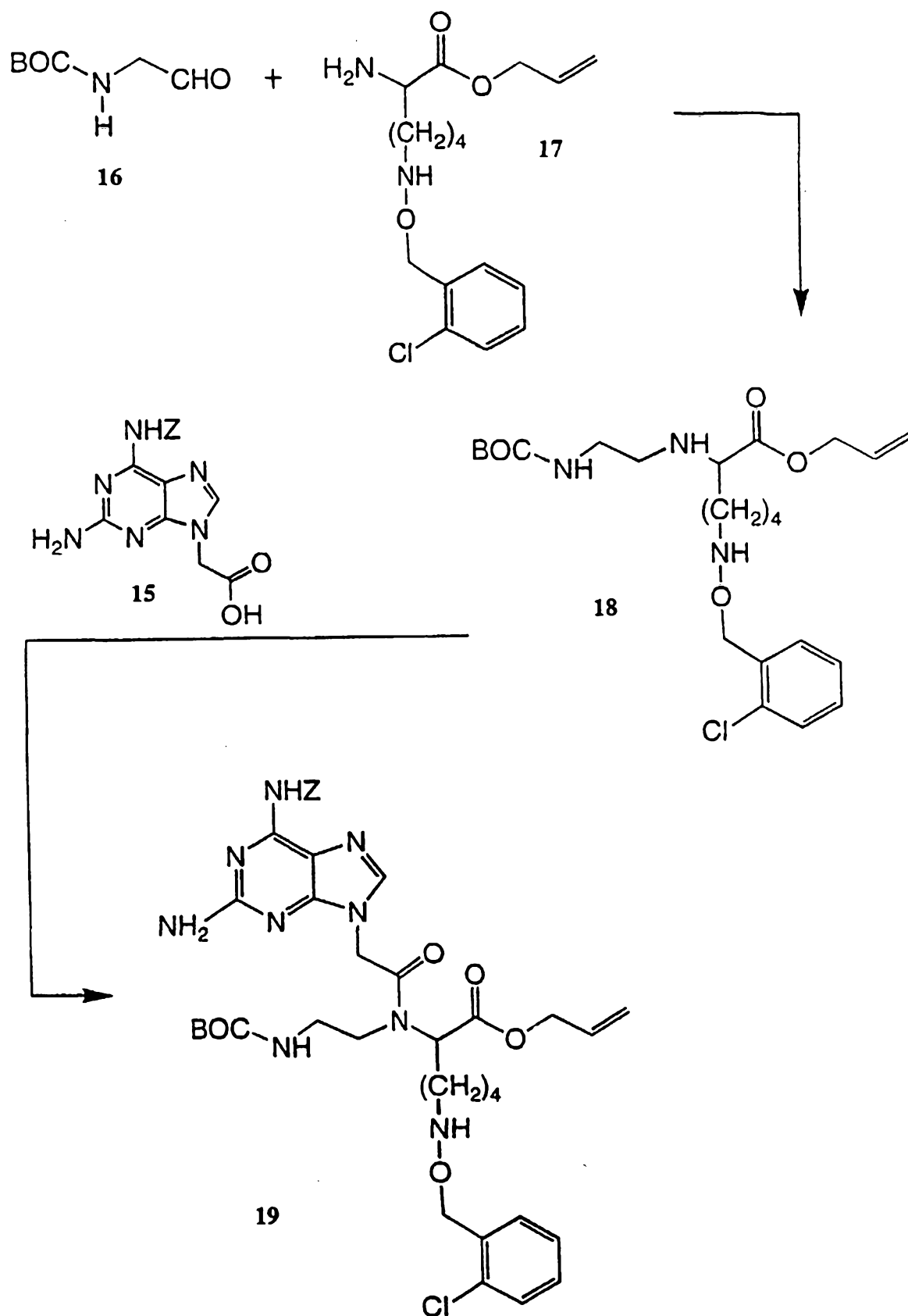


Fig. 7(a)

***Fig. 7(b)***

10/12

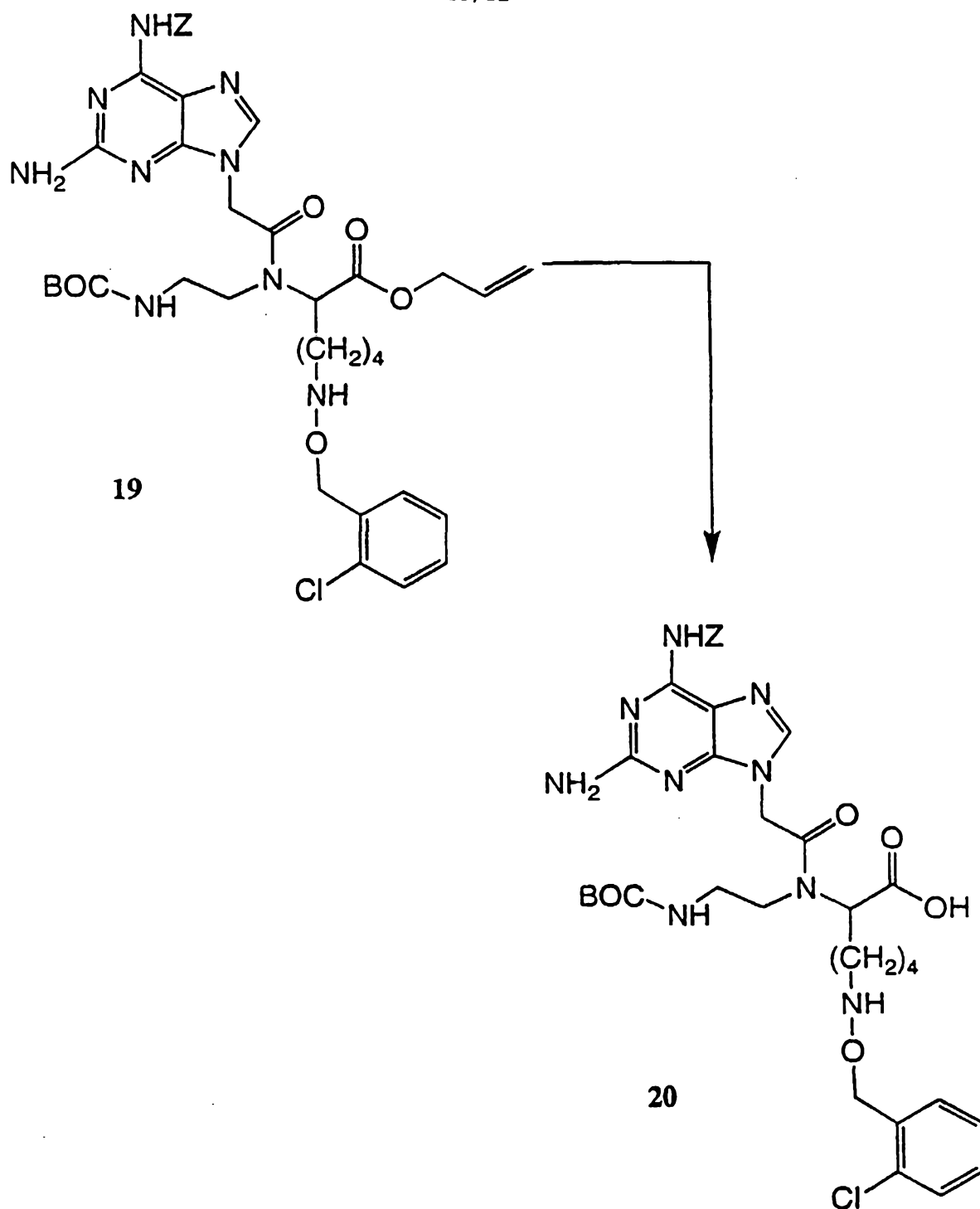
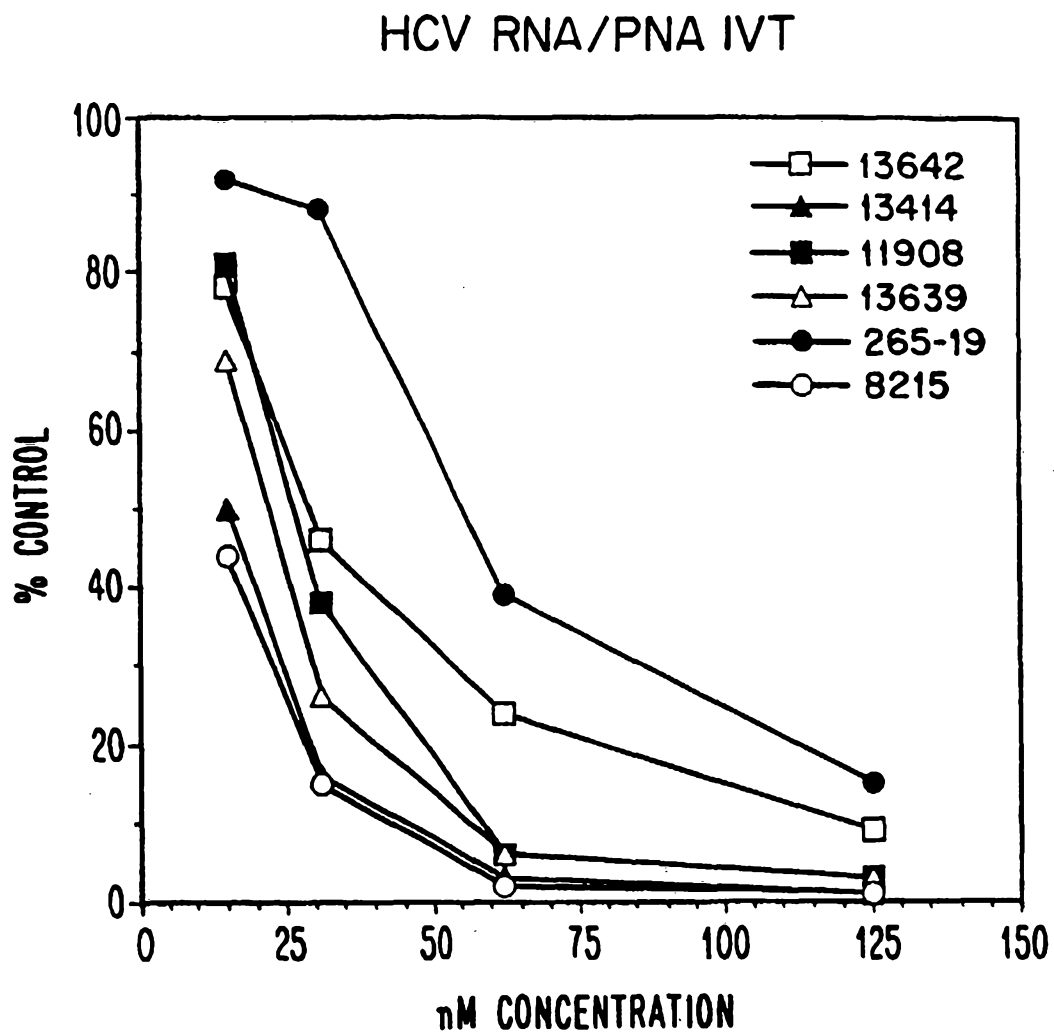


Fig. 7(c)

11/12

***Fig. 8***

12/12

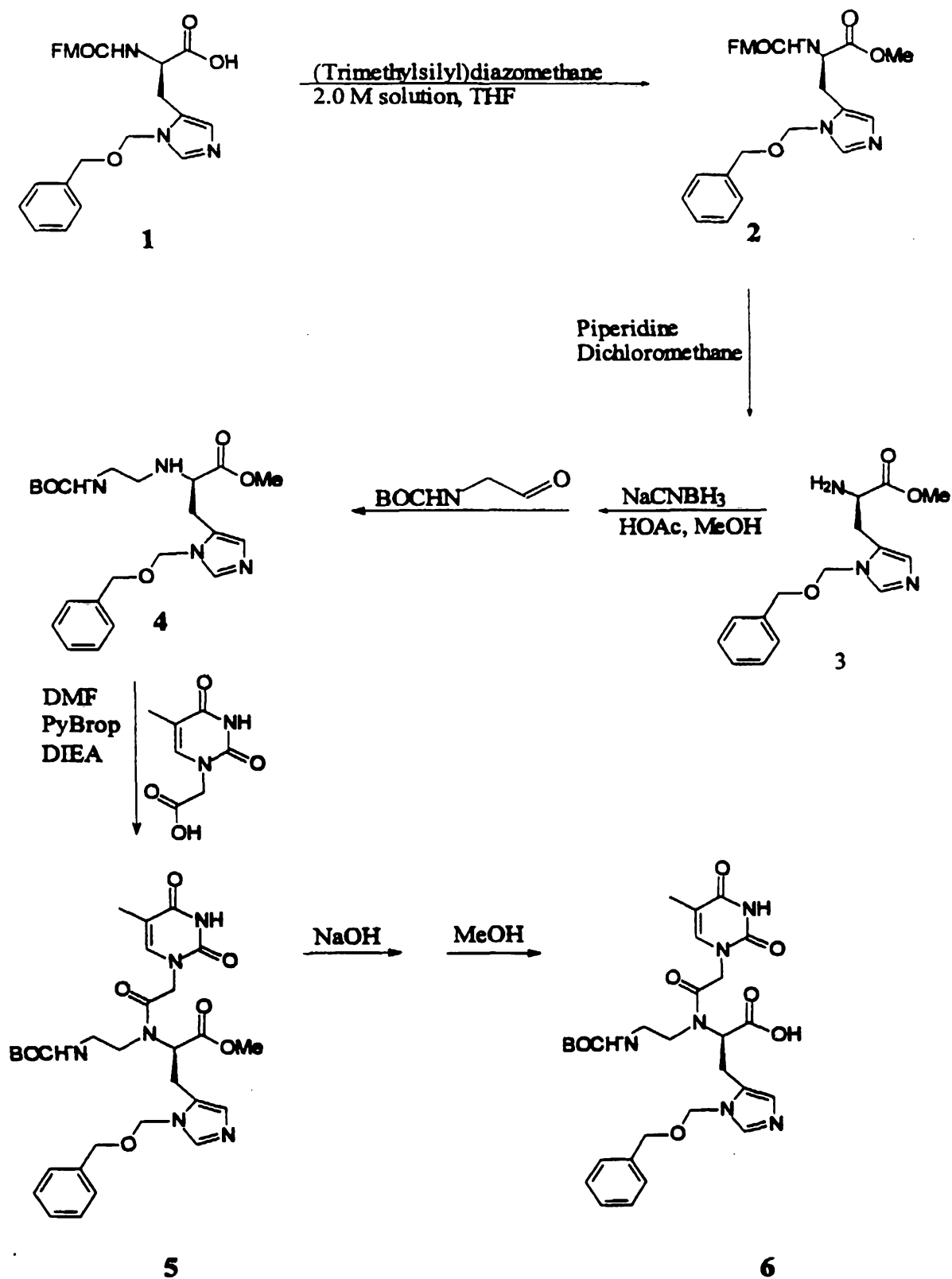


FIGURE 9